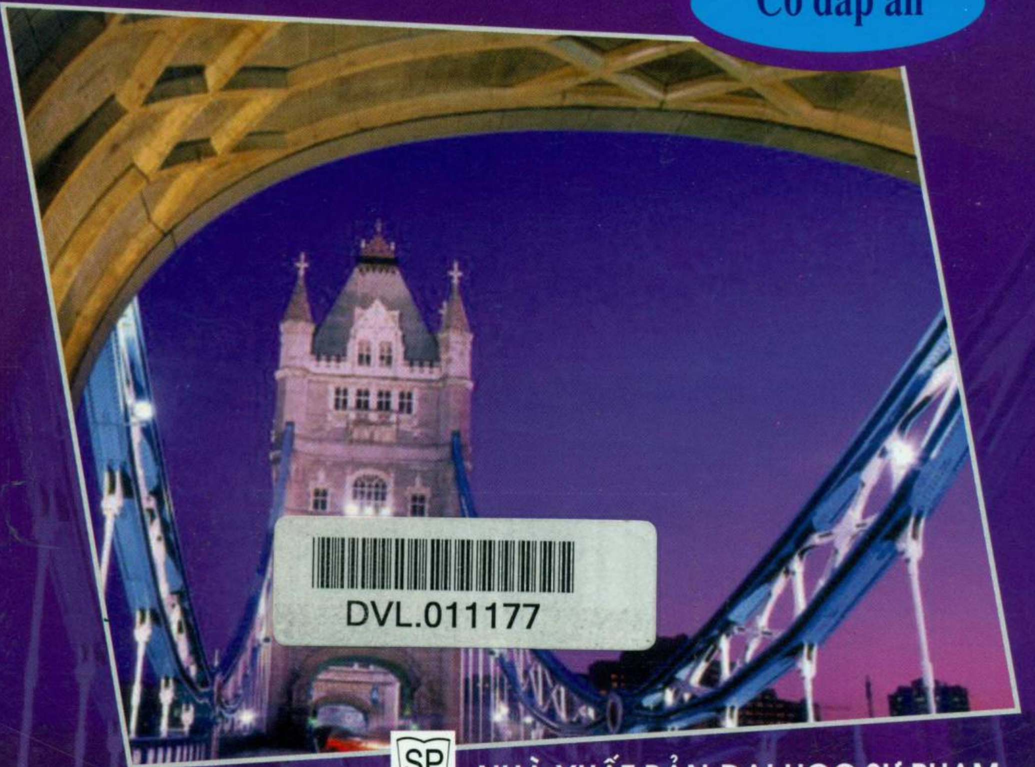
428.076
B103T

NGÔ VĂN MINH
Trung tâm Nghiên cứu và Biên soạn sách Anh Ngữ
VFIRSTBOOK

BÀI TẬP
CHUYÊN ĐỀ NGỮ PHÁP
TIẾNG ANH 12

Biên soạn theo chương trình
của Bộ Giáo dục và Đào tạo

Có đáp án



DVL.011177

SP NHÀ XUẤT BẢN ĐẠI HỌC SƯ PHẠM

428.076
B 103T

NGÔ VĂN MINH

Trung tâm Nghiên cứu và Biên soạn sách Anh Ngữ VFIRSTBOOK

BÀI TẬP
CHUYÊN ĐỀ NGỮ PHÁP
TIẾNG ANH 12

(Biên soạn theo chương trình mới của Bộ Giáo dục và Đào tạo năm 2008)

Công ty tnhh dv_vh
Tràng An
SÁCH CHƯƠNG TRÌNH
MỤC TIÊU QUỐC GIA

ĐXL.

THƯ VIỆN TỈNH BÌNH THUẬN
ĐVL /11177/ 11

NHÀ XUẤT BẢN ĐẠI HỌC SƯ PHẠM

Lời nói đầu

Các em học sinh thân mến!

Ngữ pháp tiếng Anh 12 là một trong những vấn đề trọng yếu của chương trình Tiếng Anh phổ thông. Đồng thời nó còn mang nội dung thiết thực phục vụ cho các kì thi cấp quốc gia, như thi tốt nghiệp Trung học phổ thông, Đại học, Cao đẳng …

Với ý nghĩa ấy và nhằm giúp các em có thêm nguồn tài liệu tin cậy cho học tập, ôn tập để nắm vững kiến thức Ngữ pháp tiếng Anh 12, chúng tôi biên soạn cuốn sách ***Bài tập chuyên đề ngữ pháp Tiếng Anh 12***.

Với mỗi chuyên đề Ngữ pháp, chúng tôi đều hệ thống lại kiến thức lí thuyết và đưa ra các bài tập tương ứng của từng chuyên đề, được dẫn giải từ dễ đến khó, từ đơn giản đến phức tạp. Điều này sẽ giúp các em dễ dàng nắm bắt và ghi nhớ những kiến thức cần thiết mà các em đã và đang học.

Dù tác giả đã rất cố gắng trong quá trình biên soạn, song cuốn sách ***Bài tập chuyên đề ngữ pháp Tiếng Anh 12*** xuất bản lần đầu cũng khó tránh khỏi những thiếu sót. Rất mong nhận được ý kiến đóng góp quý báu của các em học sinh và của quý bạn đọc gần xa, để khi tái bản cuốn sách được hoàn thiện hơn.

Xin trân trọng cảm ơn!

(Mọi ý kiến đóng góp của quý độc giả xin gửi trực tiếp qua địa chỉ: minhvfirstbook@yahoo.com)

NGÔ VĂN MINH

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 1: PHONETICS (NGỮ ÂM)

CÁCH PHÁT ÂM CỦA "ED" ĐƯỢC THÊM VÀO SAU ĐỘNG TỪ THƯỜNG VÀ CÁCH PHÁT ÂM CỦA ES/S ĐƯỢC THÊM VÀO SAU DANH TỪ ĐỂ TẠO RA DANH TỪ SỐ NHIỀU

1. Cách phát âm của ED

* /ed/ có ba cách đọc:

- Đọc là /id/ khi động từ tận cùng bằng /t/ hoặc /d/:

VD: want wanted
need needed

- Đọc là /t/ khi động từ tận cùng bằng /f/, /p/, /k/, /s/, /θ/, /ʃ/, /tʃ/:

VD: book booked
finish finished

- Đọc là /d/ khi động từ tận cùng bằng các âm còn lại:

VD: live lived

2. Cách đọc của es/s:

* /s/ hoặc /es/ được phát âm là /-iz/ khi danh từ hoặc động từ tận cùng bằng âm /s/, /z/, /ʃ/, /tʃ/, /dʒ/:

VD: cause causes

* /s/ được phát âm là /s/ khi danh từ hoặc động từ tận cùng bằng /k/, /p/, /t/, /f/, /θ/:

VD: roof roofs

* /s/ được phát âm là /z/ khi trước nó là nguyên âm hoặc âm /b/, /d/, /g/, /l/, /m/, /n/, /r/, /v/:

VD: game games

BÀI TẬP

Hãy chọn ra một từ trong mỗi nhóm từ, có phần in nghiêng được phát âm khác với các từ còn lại trong nhóm từ đó.

EXERCISE 1

1. a. u*se* b. cur*se* c. bu*s*iness d. ri*se*
2. a. cau*se* b. cou*s*in c. cour*se* d. de*s*ign
3. a. r*ou*gh b. thr*ou*ghout c. b*oo*t d. b*oo*th
4. a. throu*gh*out b. roug*h* c. thoug*h*t d. thoug*h*
5. a. *th*roughout b. leng*th* c. *th*us d. *th*umb
6. a. thu*s* b. thur*s*day c. de*s*ign d. ab*s*olve
7. a. abs*o*lution b. abr*u*pt c. abs*o*lute d. abr*o*gate

8. a. *a*bsent b. *a*brupt c. *a*bsence d. b*a*nkrupt
9. a. ba*th* b. bo*th* c. far*th*er d. brea*th*
10. a. b*oo*k b. l*oo*k c. t*oo* d. f*oo*t

EXERCISE 2

1. a. f*oo*d b. f*oo*l c. gl*ue* d. p*u*sh
2. a. sou*th*ern b . wi*th*in c. wi*th* d. leng*th*
3. a. bo*th* b. wi*th*out c. wi*th*hold d. wi*th*raw
4. a. Tue*s*day b. purpo*se* c. pur*se* d. cour*se*
5. a. grow*th* b. sou*th* c. *th*roughout d. wi*th*
6. a. de*s*ign b. cau*se* c. Tue*s*day d. mi*ss*
7. a. t*ea*ch b. t*ea*cher c. t*ear* d. t*ea*m
8. a. rea*ch* b. te*ch*nician c. te*ch*nology d. te*ch*nique
9. a. bl*oo*d b. fl*oo*d c. m*oo*n d. fr*u*strate
10. a. f*u*ll b. p*oo*l c. p*oo*f d. p*u*sh

EXERCISE 3

1. a. m*i*lk b. m*i*ld c. sp*i*ll d. s*i*lk
2. a. cl*i*ff b. st*i*ll c. m*i*nd d. sp*i*ll
3. a. cli*ff* b. proo*f* c. coug*h* d. o*f*
4. a. laug*h* b. roug*h* c. *gh*ee d. dea*f*
5. a. b*u*nch b. l*u*nch c. t*u*nnel d. l*u*nar
6. a. *ch*emistry b. lun*ch* c. bun*ch* d. bu*sh*
7. a. s*ch*olar b. cat*ch* c. pu*sh* d. lun*ch*eon
8. a. l*ure* b. c*ure* c. c*u*rious d. d*u*rable
9 a. dyn*a*mite b. dyn*a*mic c. m*a*nage d. m*a*n
10. a. mall*ow* b. bel*ow* c. c*ow* d. l*ow*

EXERCISE 4

1. a. pau*se* b. pla*ce* c. influen*ce* d. mou*se*
2. a. ab*ou*t b. acc*ou*nt c. m*ou*se d. c*ow*
3. a. *w*ine b. *w*ife c. *w*ind d. t*w*in
4. a. clau*se* b. cau*se* c. pau*se* d. audien*ce*
5. a. s*ou*p b. c*ou*ld c. w*ou*ld d. m*ou*ld
6. a. wor*th* b wor*th*y c. sou*th* d. ba*th*
7. a. m*ou*nd b. m*o*torway c. s*ou*nd d. m*ou*ntain

8. a. p*u*t b. s*oo*n c. c*oo*l d. r*u*le
9. a. r*u*bber b. l*o*ve c. c*u*p d. rul*er*
10. a. r*u*n b. cheap*en* c. American d. champi*on*

EXERCISE 5

1. a. *th*ousand b. *th*reat c. *th*read d. wi*th*
2. a. wi*th*draw b. mon*th* c leng*th* d. *th*ousand
3. a. cl*o*se b. d*o*se c. h*o*tel d. d*o*g
4. a. w*a*ll b. b*a*g c. p*a*n d. m*a*d
5. a. m*a*d b. m*a*nage c c*a*t d. m*ay*
6. a. mach*i*ne b. w*i*nd d. k*ey* d. pl*ea*se
7. a. m*a*chine b. ref*er* c. d*i*rection d. d*i*rectory
8. a. d*ir*t b. d*ir*ty c. *ear*nest d. elect*or*
9. a. *e*lector b. *e*lapse c. *e*lement d. el*e*mentary
10 a. *ear*ly b. *ear*n c. d*ir*ty d. m*a*chine

EXERCISE 6

1. a. ear*th*work b. ear*th*quake c. ear*th*about d. wor*th*y
2. a. *th*ree b. *th*irteen c. *th*irty d. boo*th*
3. a. pri*ze* b. cau*se* c. cour*se* d. ro*se*
4. a. d*i*rectory b. hosp*i*tal c. w*i*n d. fift*een*
5. *tw*enty b. *tw*in c. *t*aught d. *tw*enty-one
6. a. fort*y* b. eight*y* c. sevent*y* d. sevent*een*
7. a. ninet*een* b. ninet*y* c. eight*y* d. fift*y*
8. *o*ne b. *o*nly c. *o*pen d. d*o*se
9. a. *o*neself b. *o*nce c. *o*ne d. d*o*se
10 a. *o*n b. d*o*g c. c*o*st d. c*our*t

EXERCISE 7

1. a. c*o*py b. c*o*rk c. w*a*ll d. w*a*lk
2. a. w*age* b. voy*age* c. dam*age* d. us*age*
3. a. voy*age* b. *age* c. us*age* d. dam*age*
4. a. w*a*ft b. w*a*ll c. w*a*lk d. c*o*ck
5. a. *o*n b. t*a*ll c. c*a*ll d. t*a*lk
6. a. c*a*lf b. t*a*lent c. c*a*lculate d. t*a*p
7. a. cal*f* b. o*ff* c. o*f* d. rou*gh*

8. f*ou*r b. f*or*ty c. c*a*ll d. c*o*py
9. a. k*ey* b. t*i*cket c. pl*ea*d d. pl*ea*se
10. a. c*ou*nty b. c*ou*ntry c. acc*ou*nt d.acc*ou*ntable

EXERCISE 8

1. a. d*i*al b. l*i*brary c. title d. pac*i*fic
2. a. di*al* b. centr*al* c. hospit*al* d. t*all*
3. a. p*o*rtman b. G*o*rdon c. c*o*rnwall d. s*o*fa
4. a. ba*th*room b. altoge*th*er c. undernea*th* d. ten*th*
5. a. g*a*rden b. l*a*mp c. g*a*rage d. v*a*cuum
6. a. gar*age* b. voy*age* c. dama*age* d. us*age*
7. a.w*age* b. mass*age* c. dam*age* d. us*age*
8. a. gar*a*ge b. p*a*rk c. b*a*th d. fl*a*t
9. a. l*u*cky b. lott*er*y c. winn*er* d. H*a*waii
10. a. f*i*nally b. pr*i*ze c. w*i*n d. tr*y*

EXERCISE 9

1. a. d*ow*n b. n*o*tice c. t*ow*n d. c*ow*
2. a. g*u*lf b. c*u*p c. f*i*rst d. *u*ntil
3. a. m*o*ve b. t*u*na c. ch*ew* d. b*oo*kcase
4. a. d*ou*ble b. t*ou*gh c. pepp*er* d. c*u*rrypower
5. a. rec*i*pe b. ch*ee*se c. v*i*sitor d. *e*lector
6. a. b*ee*f b. wh*ea*t c. w*ee*k d. recip*e*
7. a. m*ea*l b. n*ee*d c. h*ea*t up d. w*i*nter
8. a. s*a*lty b. *aw*ful c. fl*our* d. c*o*rn
10. a. fl*a*tmate b. g*a*rage c. b*e*droom d. b*a*nk

EXERCISE 10

1. a. m*an*go b. b*an*k c. m*an* d. m*an*gle
2. a. *a*pple b. c*a*bbage c. l*a*mb d. h*ea*vy
3. a. cabb*age* b. mass*age* c. mess*age* d. w*age*
4. a. n*ee*d b. caul*i*flower c. *ea*t d. t*ea*ching
5. a. sal*a*ry b. w*or*ld c. n*ur*se d. p*er*fume
6. a. rec*or*d b. *on* c. sh*o*p d. c*o*ffee
7. a. f*oo*d b. l*oo*k c. b*oo*k d. w*oo*d
8. a. br*u*sh b. *u*se c. c*u*re d. c*u*rable

9. a. w*o*nderful b. j*ust* c. p*u*blic d. scen*er*y

10. a. isl*and* b. bost*on* c. excell*ent* d. Thailand

EXERCISE 11

1. a. f*a*mous b. f*a*me c. sp*ai*n d. jap*an*

2. a. s*ai*l b. n*ai*l c. d*ai*ly d. childr*en*

3. a. be*a*ch b. f*i*nish c. d*i*fficult d. coff*ee*

4. a. p*au*l b. c*o*ffee c. transp*or*t d. j*o*in

5. a. manag*e* b. *age* c. mess*age* d. drain*age*

6. a. ch*a*t b. m*a*nage c. d*a*rk d. pl*a*nt

7. a. po*s*ition b. clo*s*e c. choo*s*e d. de*s*ign

8. a. ref*er* b. st*ir* c. aft*er* d. h*er*b

9. a. cl*ea*n b. h*ee*l c. b*e* d. *i*nvitation

10. a. ch*oo*se b. *zoo* c. f*oo*d d. l*oo*k

EXERCISE 12

1. a. fr*ee* b. v*i*sit c. Gr*ee*ce d. s*ea*

2. a. vi*s*it b. va*s*e c. sock*s* d. oppo*s*ite

3. a. w*i*de b. m*i*le c. m*i*nd d. centimetre

4. a. freezer b. choi*ce* c. si*ze* d. sleev*es*

5. a. fr*ee*zer b. d*ee*p c. t*in* d. m*e*tre

6. a. be*a*n b. sl*i*p c. k*ee*p d. b*ee*n

7. a. r*ea*son b. b*ea*ch c. fr*e*quency d. c*i*nema

8. a. rea*s*on b. pre*s*ent c. disco*s* d. pa*ss*

9. a. ch*ur*ch b. j*u*st c. j*our*nalist d. n*ur*se

10. a. br*ea*k b. *ea*t c. s*ea* d. t*ea*

EXERCISE 13

1. a. help*u*l b. l*oo*k c. b*oo*th d. *zoo*

2. a. ge*o*rge b. sh*o*rt c. sh*aw* d. J*o*hnson

3. a. s*ur*name b. f*ir*st c. *a*live d. T*ur*key

4. a. l*o*bster b. m*o*nth c. br*o*ccoli d. l*o*ttery

5. a. mon*th* b. *th*irteen c. *th*irty d. *al*together

6. a. eig*h*teen b. toug*h* c. roug*h* d. laug*h*

7. a. *a*ttend b. *a*ccommodation c. res*er*vation d. off*er*

8. a. b*e* b. r*ea*sonably c. bus*i*ness d. conv*e*nient

9. a. imm*i*gration b. d*e*partment c. h*ee*l d. pos*i*tion

10. a. n*ee*d b. cl*ea*n c. n*ee*dle d. lastl*y*

EXERCISE 14

1. a. l*i*quid b. liqu*i*d c. p*i*eces d. l*i*d
2. a. bir*th*day b. boo*th* c. *th*eatre d. ba*th*
3. a. sh*ee*t b. asl*ee*p c. tr*ee* d. recip*e*
4. a. ch*ee*se b. cr*ea*m c. n*ee*d d. decide
5. a. fur*th*er b. *th*e c. bir*th*day d. fa*th*er
6. a. t*ea*m b. stor*y* c. par*ty* d. wind*y*
7. a. o*th*er b. lea*th*er c. weal*th*y d. *th*e
8. a. *th*ink b. *th*ermal c. *th*in d. wi*th*in
9. a. wi*th* b. wi*th*out c. *th*umb d. *th*us
10. a. heal*th*y b. lea*th*er c. o*th*er d. ba*th*e

EXERCISE 15

1. a. o*th*erwise b. *th*e c. weal*th*y d. *Th*ursday
2. a. *th*ick b. *th*ief c. *th*ink d. wea*th*er
3. a. *th*reat b. wi*th*draw c. *th*ink d. *th*us
4. a. *th*ousand b. *th*oughtful c. *th*read c. *th*emselves
5. a. *th*ere b. *th*em c. *th*at c. *th*ank
6. a. some*th*ing b. heal*thy* c. o*th*er c. *th*ing
7. a. *th*under b. wi*th*out c. *th*roughout c. *th*rill
8. a. *th*inking b. *th*ree c. *th*eir d. *th*at
9. a. *th*erefore b. *th*ere c. *th*en d. mon*th*
10. a. *th*row b. *th*ose c. *th*is d. *th*an

EXERCISE 16

1. a. *th*ermal b. *th*ief c. heal*th*y d. *th*e
2. a. *th*e b. lea*th*er c. *th*eir d. *th*rush
3. a. laug*h* b. thoug*h*t c. enoug*h* d. o*ff*
4. a. thoug*h*t b. o*f* c. coug*h* d. roug*h*
5. a. toug*h* b. laug*h* c. roug*h* d. ploug*h*
6. a. thoug*h* b. thoug*h*t c. throug*h*out d. dea*f*
7. a. sc*h*ool b. s*c*ience c. s*c*ar d. s*c*ot
8. a. *a*lternate b. co*r*ner c. reso*r*t d. gl*o*rious

9. a. c*o*me b. c*u*stoms c. *u*p d. start*er*
10. a. ent*er* b. teach*er* c. des*er*t d. oth*er*

EXERCISE 17

1. a. l*u*gguage b. r*u*bbish c. w*o*rk d. h*u*ngry
2. a. b*ir*d b. ch*ur*ch c. t*er*m d. *a*bout
3. a. sh*ir*t b. togeth*er* c. port*er* d. sauc*er*
4. a. p*o*rter b. s*au*cer c. landl*ord* d. c*o*ffee
5. a. awf*u*l b. c*oo*k c. s*u*gar d. s*ou*p
6. a. want*ed* b. need*ed* c. cook*ed* d. acquaint*ed*
7. a. he*a*t b. me*a*l c. coff*ee* d. b*e*
8. a. mang*o* b. supp*o*se c. s*o*fa d. l*o*vely
9. a. s*o*ft b. p*o*lish c. dishw*a*sher d. dr*aw*
10. a. r*ou*gh b. st*u*dy c. r*u*g d. le*ar*n

EXERCISE 18

1. a. s*o*le b. ch*oo*se c. sn*oo*ker d. z*oo*
2. a. sh*u*t b. sh*u*sh c. sh*u*nt d. sh*u*dder
3. s*i*ck b. s*i*gn c. s*i*gnify d. s*i*lk
4. a. sk*i* b. sl*ee*py c. sl*ee*ve d. s*i*ncere
5. a. s*o*ck b. s*o*p c. s*oa*r d. s*o*ften
6. a. s*ir* b. s*u*pport c. s*u*ppose d. suff*er*
7. a. s*o*me b. s*o*mewhere c. s*o*mewhat d. sk*ir*t
8. a. s*oo*n b. s*oo*t c. sm*oo*th d. sm*oo*ch
9. a. s*i*milar b. s*i*mulate c. s*i*ncere d. sl*ee*per
10. a. s*o*ny b. s*o*p c. s*o*b d. sm*a*ll

EXERCISE 19

1. a. s*o*lution b. s*u*pport c. *sur*gery d. s*u*ppose
2. a. *sto*rm b. st*o*p c. s*o*ft d. d*o*cument
3. a. sn*a*ck b. st*a*nd c. st*a*mp d. m*ar*ket
4. a. sw*ar*m b. supp*or*t c. st*o*rage d. w*a*sh
5. a. s*ur*vival b. show*er* c. shudd*er* d. st*u*ff
6. a. sw*ee*t b. ste*a*l c. str*ee*t d. sp*i*rit
7. a. surpri*se* b. bo*ss* c. speciali*se* d. specie*s*
8. a. sometime*s* b. sneez*e* c. silen*ce* d. suppo*se*

9. a. st*ea*dy b. s*tea*l c. sp*e*cies d. sp*ee*ch

10. a. sp*ea*k b. spir*i*t c. str*ea*m d. str*ea*mline

EXERCISE 20

1. a. sm*ar*k b. sm*a*sh c. sn*a*ck d. st*a*mp

2. a. st*ar*t b. sp*a*nish c. st*a*ndard d. sm*a*sh

3. a. sk*i*ll b. sk*i*m c. sk*i*d d. sn*ee*ze

4. a. sp*ee*d b. s*i*ster c. s*i*t d. s*i*tuate

5. a. sm*i*le b. s*i*gnificant c. s*i*tuation d. sleep*y*

6. a. str*i*p b. sk*i* c. sl*ee*ve d. sl*ee*py

7. a. s*o*cial b. s*o*da c. someh*o*w d. s*o*

8. a. sl*a*g b. d*ar*k c. st*ar*t d. sm*ar*k

9. a. sl*a*g b. sl*a*b c. m*a*n d. sm*e*ll

10. a. sl*i*ppery b. sl*i*pper c. sk*i*n d. *ea*t

EXERCISE 21

1. a. smeh*o*w b. sm*o*ke c. sn*o*w d. s*o*

2. a. sl*o*w b. simil*a*r c. shudd*e*r d. driv*er*

3. a. dr*o*wn b. s*oa*k c. s*o*ciety d. sl*ow*

4. a. b*ir*thday b. s*o*lution c. sk*ir*t d. s*ir*

5. a. sk*y* b. sill*y* c. stead*y* d. stud*y*

6. a. age*s* b. sometime*s* c. tre*ss* d. speciali*se*

7. a. p*o*tato b. st*o*ry c. b*o*ring d. s*o*il

8. a. s*ch*ool b. ar*ch*itect c. *ch*emistry d. pu*sh*

9. a. m*a*chine b. b*a*g c. *a*ctivity d. b*a*nk

10. a. libr*a*rian b. c*a*shier c. tr*a*nsport d. h*a*rd

ANSWER KEY

EXERCISE 1

1.a 2.c 3.a 4.b 5.c 6.a 7.b 8.b 9.c 10.c

EXERCISE 2

1.d 2.d 3.a 4.a 5.d 6.d 7.c 8.a 9.c 10.b

EXERCISE 3

1.b 2.c 3.d 4.c 5.d 6.a 7.a 8.a 9.a 10.c

EXERCISE 4

1.a 2.c 3.d 4.d 5.d 6.b 7.c 8.a 9.d 10.a

EXERCISE 5

1.d 2.a 3.d 4.a 5.d 6.b 7.b 8.d 9.c 10.d

EXERCISE 6

1.d 2.d 3.c 4.d 5.c 6.d 7.a 8.a 9.d 10.d

EXERCISE 7

1.a 2.a 3.b 4.a 5.a 6.a 7.c 8.d 9.b 10.a

EXERCISE 8

1.d 2.d 3.d 4.b 5.a 6.a 7.b 8.d 9.a 10.c

EXERCISE 9

1.b 2.c 3.d 4.c 5.b 6.d 7.d 8.c 9.c 10.c

EXERCISE 10

1.c 2.d 3.b 4.b 5.a 6.a 7.a 8.a 9.d 10.d

EXERCISE 11

1.d 2.d 3.a 4.b 5.b 6.c 7.b 8.c 9.d 10.d

EXERCISE 12

1.b 2.c 3.d 4.b 5.c 6.b 7.d 8.d 9.b 10.a

EXERCISE 13

1.c 2.d 3.c 4.b 5.d 6.a 7.c 8.c 9.c 10.d

EXERCISE 14

1.c 2.b 3.d 4.d 5.c 6.a 7.c 8.d 9.c 10.a

EXERCISE 15

1.c 2.d 3.a 4.c 5.c 6.c 7.b 8.a 9.d 10.a

EXERCISE 16

1.d 2.d 3.b 4.a 5.d 6.d 7.b 8.d 9.d 10.c

EXERCISE 17

1.c 2.d 3.a 4.d 5.d 6.c 7.c 8.d 9.d 10.d

EXERCISE 18

1.a 2.b 3.b 4.d 5.c 6.a 7.d 8.b 9.d 10.d

EXERCISE 19

1.c 2.a 3.d 4.d 5.d 6.d 7.b 8.c 9.a 10.b

EXERCISE 20

1.a 2.a 3.d 4.a 5.a 6.a 7.c 8.a 9.d 10.d

EXERCISE 21

1.a 2.a 3.a 4.b 5.a 6.c 7.a 8.d 9.a 10.d

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 2: TENSES (CÁC THÌ)

1. THE SIMPLE PRESENT TENSE (THÌ HIỆN TẠI ĐƠN)

A. Công thức

+ Affirmative form (Thể khẳng định)

- Chủ ngữ (với động từ "to be")

S+ to be (is/am/are) +...

Ex: They are teachers.

- Chủ ngữ số ít (với động từ thường)

S+ V- es/s + O

Ex: He needs three pens and a ruler.

- Chủ ngữ số nhiều (với các động từ thường)

S + V- bare infinitive + O

Ex: We work late at night.

+ Interrogative form (Thể nghi vấn)

- Với động từ tobe:

To be (is/am/are) + S + O?

Ex: Are they workers?

- Với động từ thường:

Chủ ngữ số ít:

Does + S + V-bare infinitive + O?

Ex: Does she like music?

Chủ ngữ số nhiều:

Do + S + V-bare infinitive + O?

EX: Do they work here?

+ Negative form (Phủ định)

- Với động từ to be (is/am/are):

S + to be (is/am/are) + not + O

Ex: She isn't from England.

- Với động từ thường:

Chủ ngữ số ít:

S + doesn't + V-bare infinitive + O

Ex: He doesn't like listening to music at night.

Chủ ngữ số nhiều:

S + don't + V-bare infinitive + O

Ex: They don't like swimming.

B. Cách dùng

B1. – Diễn tả sự việc hoặc hiện tượng tồn tại trong thời gian vô định.

Ex: She can speak Chinese: Cô ta có thể nói tiếng Trung Quốc.

B2. – Diễn tả một chân lý.

Ex: Two and two is four: Hai với hai là bốn.

B3. – Diễn tả một thói quen, tập quán của con người, sự việc.

Ex: I usually get up at 6 o'clock every morning: Tôi thường thức dậy vào lúc 6 giờ mỗi buổi sáng.

Chú ý:

Một số trạng từ chỉ thời gian thường được dùng trong thì này là: always, sometimes, often, never, rarely, usually, every day, every week, every year…

2. THE PRESENT CONTINUOUS TENSE (THÌ HIỆN TẠI TIẾP DIỄN)

A. Công thức **S + TO BE (IS/ARE/AM) + V-ING**

B. Cách dùng

B1. – Diễn tả hành động đang được diễn ra tại lúc nói.

Ex: I'm listening to music: Tôi đang nghe nhạc.

B2. – Diễn tả một dự định đã được sắp xếp.

Ex: I'm going to the office tomorrow: Tôi dự định đến công sở vào ngày mai.

Chú ý:

Một số trạng từ chỉ thời gian thường được dùng trong thì này: Now, at present, at the moment…

3. THE PRESENT PERFECT TENSE (THÌ HIỆN TẠI HOÀN THÀNH)

A. Công thức **S + HAS/HAVE + V3/ED**

B. Cách dùng

B1. – Diễn tả một hành động đã xảy ra trong quá khứ nhưng vẫn còn ở hiện tại và trong cả tương lai.

Ex: I have studied English for 12 years: Tôi đã học Tiếng Anh 12 năm.

B2. – Diễn tả một hành động đã qua nhưng vừa mới qua.

Ex: I have just cleaned the floor: Tôi vừa mới chùi sàn nhà.

B3. – Diễn tả một hành động đã xảy ra nhưng không xác định rõ thời gian; diễn tả một sự từng trải.

Ex: I have ever been to Hue City: Tôi đã từng đến Huế.

Chú ý:

Một số diễn ngữ thường dùng trong thì này (thời gian): today, this morning, this year, never, already, often, just, yet, since, for …

* Cách dùng của since; for

Since + Mốc thời gian

For + khoảng thời gian

Ex: I have lived there since 1999.

Ex: I have lived there for 10 years.

4. THE PRESENT PERFECT CONTINUOUS (THÌ HIỆN TẠI HOÀN THÀNH TIẾP DIỄN)

A. Công thức **S + HAS/HAVE + BEEN + V-ING**

B. Cách dùng

- Dùng để diễn tả một hành động đã xảy ra trong quá khứ nhưng vẫn còn kéo dài đến tương lai; một sự việc đã xảy ra và để lại hậu quả.

Ex: I have been writing the book all day.

Ex: You look exhausted. Have you been running?

5. THE SIMPLE PAST TENSE (THÌ QUÁ KHỨ ĐƠN)

A. Công thức **S + V-ED/2**

B. Cách dùng

- Dùng để diễn tả hành động đã xảy ra trong quá khứ và đã chấm dứt trong quá khứ.

Ex: I went to school yesterday: Ngày hôm qua tôi đi học.

Ex: I wanted to buy a book: Tôi muốn mua một cuốn sách.

Chú ý:

Một số diễn ngữ thường xuất hiện trong thì này: yesterday, last week, last year …

*** Cách thêm "ED"**

- Những động từ tận cùng bằng "E" ta chỉ thêm "D".

+ love → loved

+ like → liked

- Đổi "Y" → "I" trước khi thêm "ED" đối với những động từ tận cùng bằng "Y" trong trường hợp trước nó là một phụ âm.

+ try → tried

- Những động từ một vần, tận cùng bằng một phụ âm có một nguyên âm trước nó, ta phải nhân đôi phụ âm đó trước khi thêm "ED".

+ fit → fitted
+ beg → begged

6. THE PAST CONTINUOUS TENSE (THÌ QUÁ KHỨ TIẾP DIỄN)

A. Công thức **S + WAS/WERE + V-ING**

B. Cách dùng

- Diễn tả một hành động được tiếp diễn tại một thời điểm xác định trong quá khứ.

Ex: What were you doing at 4 o'clock yesterday evening?

- Diễn tả một hành động diễn ra trong một khoảng thời gian xác định trong quá khứ.

Ex: I was reading a book from 14:00 to 16:00 yesterday evening.

- Diễn tả một hành động xảy ra trước và kéo dài hơn so với một hành động khác xảy ra trong quá khứ.

Ex: While I was walking, I saw your mother: Trong lúc tôi đi dạo tôi trông thấy mẹ bạn.

- Diễn tả một hành động đang diễn tiến đồng thời với hành động khác đang cùng diễn tiến.

Ex: While I was cooking, she was having a bath: Trong khi tôi đang nấu ăn, cô ta đang tắm.

Chú ý:

Có hai liên từ thường đi với thì này: while, when.

WHILE + PAST CONTINUOUS,
WHEN + PAST SIMPLE,

7. THE PAST PERFECT (THÌ QUÁ KHỨ HOÀN THÀNH)

A. Công thức **S + HAD + V3/ED**

B. Cách dùng

- Diễn tả một hành động xảy ra trước và chấm dứt trước so với một hành động khác xảy ra sau và chấm dứt sau trong quá khứ.

Ex: Before I went to school, I had had breakfast.

*** Chú ý:**

Các liên từ thường được dùng trong thì này:
After, before, when

AFTER + PAST PERFECT, SIMPLE PAST
BEFORE + SIMPLE PAST, PAST PERFECT
WHEN + SIMPLE PAST, PAST PERFECT

8. THE PAST PERFECT CONTINUOUS (THÌ QUÁ KHỨ HOÀN THÀNH TIẾP DIỄN)

A. Công thức **S + HAD + BEEN + V- ING**

B. Cách dùng

- Diễn tả sự liên tục.

Ex: We were tired because we had been studying all day.

- Diễn tả sự tiếp diễn sau khi sự việc thứ hai xảy ra.

Ex: Last night, when I came, he had been writing.

9. THE SIMPLE FUTURE (THÌ TƯƠNG LAI ĐƠN)

A. Công thức **S + WILL/SHALL + Vnguyên mẫu**

B. Cách dùng

- Diễn tả một hành động, sự việc sẽ diễn ra trong tương lai.

Ex: I will visit you tomorrow.

Chú ý:

Một số diễn ngữ chỉ thời gian thường dùng trong thì này: tomorrow, next week, next month ……

10. THE NEAR FUTURE (THÌ TƯƠNG LAI GẦN)

A. Công thức **Be going to**

B. Cách dùng

- Diễn tả một dự định cho tương lai và dự định đó đã có sự suy xét cẩn thận.

Ex: I'm going to go for a walk: Tôi đang chuẩn bị đi dạo.

11. THE FUTURE CONTINUOUS (THÌ TƯƠNG LAI TIẾP DIỄN)

A. Công thức **S + WILL/SHALL + BE + V-ING**

B. Cách dùng

- Diễn tả một hành động đang diễn tiến tại một thời điểm xác định trong tương lai.

Ex: When you phone me at 8:00, I will be leaving.

12. THE FUTURE PERFECT (THÌ TƯƠNG LAI HOÀN THÀNH)

A. Công thức **S + WILL/SHALL + HAVE + V3/ED**

B. Cách dùng

- Diễn tả hành động sẽ được hoàn thành trước so với một hành động khác bắt đầu.

Ex: By the time you come, I shall have gone out.

- Diễn tả hành động hoàn thành trước một thời gian nhất định trong tương lai.

Ex: By the end of this month, I will have finished building the house.

13. THE FUTURE PERFECT CONTINUOUS (THÌ TƯƠNG LAI HOÀN THÀNH TIẾP DIỄN)

A. Công thức **S + WILL/SHALL + HAVE BEEN + V-ING**

THƯ VIỆN TỈNH BÌNH THUẬN
ĐVL /11177/ 11

B. Cách dùng

- Nhấn mạnh một hành động sẽ còn được tiếp diễn so với một thời điểm xác định trong tương lai.

Ex: By the end of this month, I will have been learning English for five years.

BÀI TẬP

BASIC SECTION – PHẦN CƠ BẢN

Exercise 1: Hãy sử dụng thì quá khứ đơn cho mỗi động từ trong ngoặc đơn.

Example: *They worked hard yesterday.*

1. They (cancel) the baseball game last week.
2. How you (get) there? I (take) a taxi.
3. They (not write) to me two years ago.
4. I last (meet) them when I (be) there.
5. They (watch) TV all day, so they (not finish) painting the wall.
6. John has worked for the company since he (give up) working in Ho Chi Minh City.
7. The children (sleep) well last night.
8. He (not teach) me how to use the machine.
9. They (speak) to him last night. They (approve) of his plans.
10. He (admit) having left the door open last night.

Your answer:

1…………………………… **2**………………………………
3…………………………… **4**………………………………
5…………………………… **6**………………………………
7…………………………… **8**………………………………
9…………………………… **10**……………………………

11. Whatever I (say), he (go) out without his parents' permission.
12. They (succeed) in persuading him to bring a raincoat.
13. He can't do the exercise because he (not pay) attention to my explanation.
14. Mary feels sick because she (eat) a lot of cakes.
15. He (enter) the room and (sit) on a chair.
16. She said she (know) what to do.
17. They (put) up the tent as soon as he (come) back.
18. They (have) an accident, so both of them (stay) in bed.
19. The last time I (hear) from him (be) ten years ago.
20. They (show) me the way to the park.

Your answer:

11…………………………… **12**……………………………

13.. **14**..

15.. **16**..

17.. **18**..

19.. **20**..

21. Unfortunately he (leave) the key in his car.
22. I'm sorry. I (misunderstand) your instruction.
23. I (find) it difficult for her to carry the case.
24. They (build) the house five years ago.
25. He (promise) to help me but he (break) his word.
26. They (burn) all his letters because he is a liar.
27. He couldn't drive himself because he (drink) too much.
28. She (hide) all her savings under the bed.
29. He (lose) his money because he wasn't careful.
30. He (steal) her handbag, so they (send) him to the prison.

Your answer:

21.. **22**..

23.. **24**..

25.. **26**..

27.. **28**..

29.. **30**..

31. The manager (omit) them from the list.
32. The driver (stop) the car in time to avoid the accident.
33. They (play) better, so they (win) the game.
34. How many mistakes you (make) in the last test?
35. They (sell) their car at a low price.
36. Tom (bring) his own dictionary to class tonight.
37. The teacher (explain) the meaning of the new word to me.
38. We (teach) at the university three months ago.
39. We (receive) two letters from him several days ago.
40. They (carry) the luggage carefully.

Your answer:

31.. **32**..

33.. **34**..

35.. **36**..

37.. **38**..

39.. **40**..

41. The students (fail) the exam because they (not study) hard.
42. She (put) the book on the table and (go) out without saying a word.
43. We (buy) a lot of green vegetable this morning.
44. Fortunately we (book) our tickets in advance.
45. They (borrow) some money from the bank.
46. He (lend) his car to a woman.

47. The secretary (copy) the minute very carefully.
48. They (describe) the building to us after the lunch.
49. The president (agree) with me on my plans.
50. I'm sorry. I (forget) about the meeting.

Your answer:

41...................................... 42......................................
43...................................... 44......................................
45...................................... 46......................................
47...................................... 48......................................
49...................................... 50......................................

51. He (send) the other letters to the policeman.
52. They (hold) the ring carefully in order not to lose it.
53. They (keep) looking at me for a long time.
54. They (pay) for the car in cash.
55. My younger sister (wear) a long dress to the wedding party.
56. The dog (tear) the shirt.
57. The boy (fall) on his slippery steps and (hurt) himself.
58. We (catch) the thief last night.
59. After lunch, we (feel) tired.
60. What were you doing when the phone (ring)?

Your answer:

51...................................... 52......................................
53...................................... 54......................................
55...................................... 56......................................
57...................................... 58......................................
59...................................... 60......................................

Exercise 2: Hãy dùng thì hiện tại đơn hoặc thì hiện tại tiếp diễn cho mỗi động từ trong ngoặc.

Example: ***She gets up at 6:00 a.m every morning.***
They are watching TV now.

1. She usually (have) breakfast at 6:30 A.M and she (have) breakfast now.
2. I'm sorry. We (not have) enough money now.
3. She (like) listening to music at night. She (listen) to music now.
4. We (write) a letter at the moment.
5. What you (do) now? I (watch) TV.
6. John is a careful driver. He always (drive) carefully.
7. He rarely (go) to bed before 10:00 P.M. He usually (work) late at night.
8. We often (visit) our family in summer.
9. We (do) our homework right now.
10. I (read) a book about Mr. Thanh's life.

Your answer:

1...................................... 2......................................

3.................................... **4**....................................

5.................................... **6**....................................

7.................................... **8**....................................

9.................................... **10**....................................

11. Don't worry. He always (go) home on time.

12. Mr. Hung and Mr. Tam (fly) to New York City every summer.

13. Where (be) Mr. Minh? He (answer) telephone now.

14. My mother (make) some cakes now. She sometimes (make) cakes for us.

15. Our class always (start) at 6:00 P.M and (finish) at 9:00 P.M.

16. Listen! Someone (knock) at the front door.

17. It (rain) very much in Hue in winter. It (rain) very hard.

18. My children (cut) grass in the garden. They often (help) us do housework after class.

19. The woman (sit) on the chair. I don't know why she (sit) there every morning.

20. Don't annoy him. He (study) English.

Your answer:

11.................................... **12**....................................

13.................................... **14**....................................

15.................................... **16**....................................

17.................................... **18**....................................

19.................................... **20**....................................

21. Although she (not be) good at English, they accepted her application.

22. I (know) him very well. We (be) close friends.

23. He (teach) us English. He (be) a teacher of English.

24. The workers (work) 10 hours a day. They (work) very hard every day.

25. We (review) our old lessons this week.

26. What you (do) now? We (wait) for the doctor.

27. I (have) a bad cold. You should take some medicine for it.

28. We (fly) to Ha Noi Capital. We usually (visit) our brother on Sunday.

29. They never (go) out before they (finish) their homework.

30. We (read) an interesting book. We (like) reading books very much.

Your answer:

21.................................... **22**....................................

23.................................... **24**....................................

25.................................... **26**....................................

27.................................... **28**....................................

29.................................... **30**....................................

31. Be quiet! The children (sleep).

32. He is an engineer. He (work) for the company.

33. What we (eat) every day?

34. Please wait a moment! I (find) the book.
35. Don't interrupt me while I (speak).
36. Look! The dogs (run) into the house. The man (feed) them.
37. He (take) a short rest. He has just finished typing the book.
38. Everybody (have) their own freedom.
39. The wall (look) very old. He (paint) this week.
40. The weather (get) very hot in summer.

Your answer:

31.................................. 32..................................
33.................................. 34..................................
35.................................. 36..................................
37.................................. 38..................................
39.................................. 40..................................

41. She (be) in the room. She (read) a book.
42. They (prepare) breakfast while I (have) a bath.
43. He (drink) coffee every morning. He (drink) a cup of coffee now.
44. I can't help you now. I (clean) the floor.
45. The telephone (ring). I'll answer it.
46. She (hate) fish. She never (eat) fish.
47. The driver (drive) so fast that we can't answer your telephone.
48. They (build) the stadium. They have built it for 5 years.
49. They (study) hard for the exam. I hope they will pass it.
50. The sun (rise). It looks very beautiful.

Your answer:

41.................................. 42..................................
43.................................. 44..................................
45.................................. 46..................................
47.................................. 48..................................
49.................................. 50..................................

51. You can't meet him. He (feed) lions.
52. If you (want) to be a writer, you will have to study harder.
53. He always (have) breakfast before going to school.
54. I (need) some change to buy a stamp.
55. She was born in Viet Nam but she (live) in America now.
56. I (have) trouble with my English, but I'll improve it soon.
57. We (go) to office by bus to save money. The price of petrol has been rising.
58. Swimming makes us healthier. We (swim).
59. Keep silent! The teacher (come).
60. The fishman (fish). He usually (fish) here.

Your answer:

51.................................. 52..................................

53.. 54..
55.. 56..
57.. 58..
59.. 60..

Exercise 3: Hãy sử dụng thì quá khứ đơn hoặc thì quá khứ tiếp diễn cho mỗi động từ trong ngoặc đơn.

Example: ***She met me this morning.***
I was doing homework at 8:00 p.m last night.

1. They (study) Japanese at Duy Tan University last year.
2. He (receive) your letter this morning.
3. What you (do) when I (phone) you yesterday morning?
4. He (stand) here when I (see) him by accident.
5. They (sleep) on the floor at 8:00 this morning.
6. When you last (see) him? I last (see) him two days ago.
7. While I (walk) around the park, I (see) an accident.
8. I (have) lunch while my father (have) a bath.
9. Mrs. Lanh (talk) to the man when she (hear) the loud noise.
10. How many photographs you (take)? Only three.

Your answer:

1.. 2..
3.. 4..
5.. 6..
7.. 8..
9.. 10..

11. We (have) a quarrel, so she (avoid) meeting me this morning.
12. We finally (open) the door. We (lose) the key.
13. Tam and Nam (glance) at her and (sit) down.
14. They (write) a letter when I (knock) the door.
15. They (visit) us last summer.
16. Because it (rain) hard yesterday evening, we (cancel) the game.
17. She (look) for her watch when you (call) her.
18. What they (do) at 3:00 yesterday evening?
19. We (damage) the building, so they (make) us pay for the damage.
20. It is an interesting book. I (buy) it last week.

Your answer:

11.. 12..
13.. 14..
15.. 16..
17.. 18..
19.. 20..

21. Tom (drive) to Ho Chi Minh City when he (see) the boy.
22. They (call) an ambulance as soon as they (see) the accident.

23. He (repair) the roof when his daughter (bring) him a glass of water.
24. They (turn) off the light while he (play) the guitar.
25. They (annoy) him by asking him some silly questions.
26. They (say) nothing when the president (appear).
27. They have been homeless since the storm (appear).
28. We (get) bored because of a boring speech.
29. The president (make) a speech when someone (say) "hello".
30. He (win) two thousand pounds, but he (not give) up his work.

Your answer:

21.................................... **22**....................................
23.................................... **24**....................................
25.................................... **26**....................................
27.................................... **28**....................................
29.................................... **30**....................................

31. She (apply) for the job but she (turn down).
32. The fire (destroy) the hotel when they (go) to bed.
33. He (arrive) in time to save the woman.
34. The women (make up) while we (talk) to the man.
35. The boy (stand) here when the accident (happen).
36. What you (do) last night? I (practise) speaking English.
37. Our brother (return) to America two weeks ago.
38. The mailman (deliver) the letter five minutes ago.
39. She (put) the key on the table, (glance) at him and (say) nothing.
40. The man (carry) the case for her when he (break) the glass.

Your answer:

31.................................... **32**....................................
33.................................... **34**....................................
35.................................... **36**....................................
37.................................... **38**....................................
39.................................... **40**....................................

41. When he (arrive) at the station, the train had left.
42. We (draw) a picture at 5:00 P.M yesterday.
43. The men (give) me a sweet and (tell) me to go away.
44. I (bear) in Viet Nam. I haven't visited my country for 15 years.
45. The last time I (fly) to Hue City was 5 years ago.
46. We (live) in Da Lat in 2006.
47. We (have) a great deal of trouble with the car last night.
48. The weather (be) nice yesterday, so they (decide) to go on a pinic.
49. He (work) on his English assignment when the man (break into) his house.
50. He (wash) his car while she (clean) the floor.

Your answer:

41…………………………… **42**……………………………

43…………………………… **44**……………………………

45…………………………… **46**……………………………

47…………………………… **48**……………………………

49…………………………… **50**……………………………

51. It's high time you (buy) a new motorbike.
52. I'd rather you (see) the doctor now.
53. By the time you (come), the film had been started.
54. No sooner had he gone out than the telephone (ring).
55. They had hardly put up the tent when it (rain).
56. They had left when you (arrive).
57. He (go) to school after he had had lunch.
58. Before he (give) me the information, he had asked Mr. Nam for advice.
59. He (not believe) in what I said.
60. I (watch) TV when she (shout) at her children.

Your answer:

51…………………………… **52**……………………………

53…………………………… **54**……………………………

55…………………………… **56**……………………………

57…………………………… **58**……………………………

59…………………………… **60**……………………………

Exercise 4: Hãy dùng thì Quá khứ đơn hoặc thì Hiện tại hoàn thành cho mỗi động từ trong ngoặc đơn.

Example: ***He cried yesterday.***

I have just heard about the news.

1. He (teach) at the university for 10 years.
2. They (not meet) together for several years.
3. She (wait) for you for two hours.
4. It (rain) so much since July.
5. She (work) as an accountant since she (leave) university.
6. You (ever be) to New York City?
7. The cost of living (rise) recently.
8. I (just finish) repairing the roof.
9. He (improve) his English so much lately. He can write the sentence in English.
10. Up to now they (not build) the bridge.

Your answer:

1…………………………… **2**……………………………

3…………………………… **4**……………………………

5…………………………… **6**……………………………

7…………………………… **8**……………………………

9.................................... **10**..

11. I (not do) my homework yet.
12. I (never taste) a more delicious cake.
13. This is the first time we (visit) the city. It is very nice and big.
14. So far they (mention) the matter to Mr. John.
15. We (work) here since September.
16. They (already have) lunch, so we don't feel tired.
17. I (read) this good book three times.
18. His company (increase) its production by thirty percent for six months.
19. My country (change) rapidly for the past two years.
20. I (not hear) from her since 1999. I'm looking forward to seeing her again.

Your answer:

11...................................... **12**..
13...................................... **14**..
15...................................... **16**..
17...................................... **18**..
19...................................... **20**..

21. When I (arrive) at the rail station, the train had just left.
22. I (never be) there before.
23. They (see) the film several times this month.
24. They (move) to the city since last week.
25. It (be) nicer since January.
26. It (rain) hard all day yesterday, so we (stay) at home.
27. Ok. They (live) in the city from 1996 to 1999.
28. They (meet) their daughter since Christmas.
29. I (see) Mr. Vu on TV hundreds of times.
30. No sooner had she opened the door than the dog (run) into the room.

Your answer:

21...................................... **22**..
23...................................... **24**..
25...................................... **26**..
27...................................... **28**..
29...................................... **30**..

31. Yes, we (repair) the machine several times already.
32. I (meet) your boyfriend at Lovers Coffee Shop.
33. The singer (perform) very well last night. She is a famous singer.
34. They (test) the weapon yesterday evening.
35. Now that you (learn) its rules, you won't have difficulty in playing the game.
36. It's high time you (study) harder for your exam.
37. The plants (die) because they (not water) them.

38. They would rather you (stay) at home than (go) out.
39. I (not fly) to Ha Noi for six years.
40. Mr. Minh (make) a wonderful speech yesterday. We all (pay) attention to his performance.

Your answer:

31.................................... 32....................................
33.................................... 34....................................
35.................................... 36....................................
37.................................... 38....................................
39.................................... 40....................................

41. They (travel) to Can Tho by air last month.
42. You (be) at your office yet?
43. It had hardly rained when he (enter) the house.
44. They (talk) about the topic since 9:00 A.M.
45. The train (arrive) in the city since July.
46. He (write) this book in two months.
47. They had to postpone the match because the weather (be) bad.
48. We (seak) to Mr. John after class. He said that he (agree) with you on your plans.
49. They (spend) their childhood in the country.
50. It (be) careless of you to leave the door open. You should have locked it before going out.

Your answer:

41.................................... 42....................................
43.................................... 44....................................
45.................................... 46....................................
47.................................... 48....................................
49.................................... 50....................................

51. She is the most intelligent woman that I (ever meet).
52. They (drive) fast, so they (have) a terrible accident yesterday.
53. She (get) lost because she (not have) a map.
54. I (never travel) by air before, so I feel nervous now.
55. I (phone) you two times this morning.
56. The course (last) three months, so I couldn't spend my holiday in the countryside.
57. They (fail) the test because of their laziness.
58. She (apologize) to them for having stolen the computer.
59. Thousands of citizens (be) homeless since the hurricane (appear).
60. When I (get) up, I (hear) a loud noise, but I (not know) what (happen).

Your answer:

51.................................... 52....................................
53.................................... 54....................................

55.................................... 56....................................

57.................................... 58....................................

59.................................... 60....................................

Exercise 5: Hãy dùng thì Hiện tại đơn hoặc thì Hiện tại tiếp diễn hoặc thì Hiện tại hoàn thành để hoàn thành mỗi động từ trong ngoặc đơn.

Example: ***The sun goes around the earth.***

She is having lunch now.

He has been to the city before.

1. He (live) and (work) in America.
2. We (have) a good time in the countryside since our arrival.
3. He (finish) all his housework up to now.
4. He (write) another book at present.
5. It usually (spend) spare time playing football.
6. I (spend) two dollars on shopping a day.
7. They (work) very hard. They (work) 70 hours a week.
8. I (be) sorry. I (forget) its address already.
9. I (read) a book about Uncle Ho's life at the moment.
10. I (meet) her at the coffee shop many times.

Your answer:

1.................................... 2....................................

3.................................... 4....................................

5.................................... 6....................................

7.................................... 8....................................

9.................................... 10....................................

11. I (look) forward to hearing from them.
12. Unfortunately they (have) an appointment at the moment.
13. My father (talk) to Ms. Lanh on telephone now.
14. A lot of students in the class (come) from England.
15. They (study) in America for 3 years. They, of course (miss) their homeland very much.
16. She (go) swimming every morning.
17. They (make) a great progress in economy for the last few years.
18. Please wait a moment! My manager (answer) telephone.
19. I can't continue my work because it (be) noisy.
20. My brother and I (live) in Da Nang City for almost five years.

Your answer:

11.................................... 12....................................

13.................................... 14....................................

15.................................... 16....................................

17.................................... 18....................................

19.................................... 20....................................

21. She (need) two hundred dollars a month.
22. You (waste) your valuable time. You (have) nothing to do, don't you?
23. I (save) money to buy a house since I got married.
24. So far, they (make) no decision at all.
25. I am sorry. I (not know) the meaning of the new word.
26. The woman, who (sit) between Huong and Lan, is my mother.
27. New York (be) a beautiful city. I (be) there many times.
28. I (not tell) him about the matter for two weeks.
29. I usually (make) a phone call in the morning.
30. She was born in Hue but she (live) in Da Lat now.

Your answer:

21...................................... **22**......................................
23...................................... **24**......................................
25...................................... **26**......................................
27...................................... **28**......................................
29...................................... **30**......................................

31. She (watch) a football match on TV every Sunday.
32. We (wait) for him here since 9:00 A.M.
33. We all (know) that "Every dog (have) his day."
34. Jane (take) a three month English course next week.
35. Mr. John (take) me to the palace this afternoon. This (be) the first time I (visit) the city.
36. I (not know) what to do now.
37. My father (play) chess with his friend. You can't see him now.
38. I (write) something while she (clean) the wall.
39. The girl, who (wear) the red shirt, is my girlfriend.
40. I (hate) being shouted at.

Your answer:

31...................................... **32**......................................
33...................................... **34**......................................
35...................................... **36**......................................
37...................................... **38**......................................
39...................................... **40**......................................

41. The men (look) at pictures now. They (be) here since this morning.
42. She often (spend) her spare time looking after her children. She (love) her children very much.
43. It (not be) far from her house to school, so she (go) to school on foot every day.
44. She always (check) minutes before giving me.
45. Don't worry. She (be) always punctual.
46. I (live) in the area for six years, so I (get) used to its climate.
47. The house (belong) to my brother. He (buy) it since 2007.

48. Where (be) your sister? She (have) meal in the kitchen.

49. What you (buy) for the dinner? I am going to buy some fresh fish.

50. I will meet you later. I (go) to the movie.

Your answer:

41...................................... 42......................................

43...................................... 44......................................

45...................................... 46......................................

47...................................... 48......................................

49...................................... 50......................................

51. We (spend) so much on food lately.

52. They (not make) any questions so far.

53. Now that they (build) this street, it will take you only five minutes to go to school.

54. You (apply) for the job yet?

55. They (just ask) him the question.

56. I (already prepare) the meal.

57. Up to now, they (understand) your explanation.

58. Up to the present, she (leave) Hai Phong for Ha Noi Capital.

59. His healthl (be) better recently.

60. I (not receive) your letters for five months.

Your answer:

51...................................... 52......................................

53...................................... 54......................................

55...................................... 56......................................

57...................................... 58......................................

59...................................... 60......................................

Exercise 6: Hãy sử dụng thì Quá khứ hoàn thành hoặc thì Quá khứ đơn hoặc thì hiện tại hoàn thành cho mỗi động từ trong ngoặc.

Example: ***They had done their exercise.***

I saw her at the party.

We have been there since 1999.

1. When I (come) home, they (leave) for Ha Noi Capital.

2. The plane (take off) when I (arrive) at the air port.

3. Before he (answer) your question, he (think) twice his word.

4. They (listen) to the music since Monday.

5. After the manager (answer) his telephone, he (come) into the office.

6. She (learn) English before she (fly) to America to work.

7. Due to the bad weather condition, they (postpone) the game until next day.

8. No sooner he (go) to bed than she (appear).

9. By the time he operated the machine, he (finish) repairing it.

10. They hardly (say) goodbye to her when everything (go) wrong.

Your answer:

1.. 2..

3.. 4..

5.. 6..

7.. 8..

9.. 10..

11. The workers (complain) about the matter to me many times.

12. They (put) up the tent before it (rain).

13. The storm (destroy) thousands of houses in the city since it (appear).

14. She (turn) off the lights and (lock) all doors.

15. They were driving a car when they (realize) that they (not fasten) their seat belt.

16. I (work) with Mr. Thang several times. He is a good man.

17. Their friendship (last) for 20 years. I think they can't live without the friendship.

18. They (build) the house before he came back.

19. He (not change) his mind recently.

20. They no sooner (read) the newspaper than the bell (ring).

Your answer:

11.. 12..

13.. 14..

15.. 16..

17.. 18..

19.. 20..

21. The last time I (play) football was five years ago.

22. While he was sitting on a chair, he (find) out the mistake.

23. Not until I (leave) home did I realize how much I love my father.

24. Who are you waiting for? You (be) her for 6 hours.

25. His parents (die) when he (be) nine years old.

26. After the earthquake, they (become) homeless.

27. He (work) as a manager before he (retire).

28. They said that they (meet) him the night before.

29. She (be) absent from school because of her illness.

30. It (be) very kind of you to help me. Without your help, I couldn't have finished my homework.

Your answer:

21.. 22..

23.. 24..

25.. 26..

27.. 28..

29.. 30..

31. When she (hear) about the news, they (disappear).

32. They (put) out the fire before the firemen (come).
33. Of course they (know) how to use a computer before they (apply) for the job.
34. Since you (leave) last month, everything (change).
35. When the alarm (ring), we (open) the door quickly.
36. We (not see) him since he (move) to his new house.
37. When the woman (see) the accident, she (phone) me and (send) the victim to the hospital.
38. When he (stop) his car, the accident (happen).
39. After he (know) the message, he (shout) at her.
40. They (spend) five thousand dollars on shopping since May.

Your answer:

31.................................... **32**....................................
33.................................... **34**....................................
35.................................... **36**....................................
37.................................... **38**....................................
39.................................... **40**....................................

41. Up to now, I (understand) the lesson.
42. I (write) a reply to her since September.
43. By the time you came back, they (find) the file.
44. I (speak) to my boss before I (meet) you.
45. They (sell) the old car before they (buy) a new one.
46. We (not believe) in what you say since we (realize) who you are.
47. She (live) on her salary since she (leave) the university.
48. I (talk) to him hundreds of times.
49. He is not here. He (just, go) out.
50. We (fly) to Thailand since last week.

Your answer:

41.................................... **42**....................................
43.................................... **44**....................................
45.................................... **46**....................................
47.................................... **48**....................................
49.................................... **50**....................................

51. I'd rather they (not say) anything.
52. No sooner they (start) the game than it (rain) heavily.
53. Hardly she (enter) the room when he (go) out.
54. By the time he opened the book, the teacher (tell) him to stand up.
55. She (have) a lot of trouble with her motorbike last week.
56. Mary and Tam (shout) when they (see) a snake.
57. I (not finish) writing this book yet.
58. I (graduate) from the university in 2001.
59. It is nearly 10 years since I (become) a teacher of English.

60. When I (arrive) at the movie, they were sitting on the chair.

Your answer:

51................................ **52**..................................

53................................ **54**..................................

55................................ **56**..................................

57................................ **58**..................................

59................................ **60**..................................

Exercise 7: Hãy sử dụng thì Hiện tại hoàn thành tiếp diễn hoặc thì Hiện tại hoàn thành hoặc thì Hiện tại tiếp diễn để hoàn thành các động từ trong ngoặc.

Example: ***She has been learning English for 6 years.***
They have built the house since 2008.
They are listening to music now.

1. Although I (try) to give up smoking for months, I (not succeed) yet.
2. She feels tired because she (run) so fast.
3. I (not see) the film for years.
4. She (have) no trouble with her exercise up to now.
5. The children (sleep) since 9:00 A.M.
6. My father (rest) in the bedroom. He (have) a bad cold for days.
7. Come in, please. My boss (wait) for you for two hours.
8. I (visit) the country tomorrow. I (never, be) there before.
9. How long you (learn) English?
10. I (not come) back my hometown for years. I (visit) it this week.

Your answer:

1................................ **2**..................................

3................................ **4**..................................

5................................ **6**..................................

7................................ **8**..................................

9................................ **10**..................................

11. We (work) very hard for months, so we are exhausted now.
12. I (read) the novel several times before.
13. Listen! Someone (sing).
14. She can't lend you the tape because she (listen) to it.
15. Look! The sun (rise).
16. She (not be) here since last week. It's worthless waiting for her.
17. I (write) this book for two months, but I (not finish) it yet.
18. You (ever meet) the famous singer?
19. Wait a moment! I (type) a letter.
20. They (discuss) about the problem for 3 hours, but they (not find) a better solution to the problem.

Your answer:

11................................ **12**..................................

13....................................... **14**.......................................
15....................................... **16**.......................................
17....................................... **18**.......................................
19....................................... **20**.......................................

21. Up to the present, I (find) a good job.
22. Hundreds of animals (die) for the past five years.
23. Why are you crying? Mr. Thanh (tell) you the sad story?
24. The bell (ring) for two minutes. I'll open the door.
25. I (do) almost exercise in the book so far.
26. The children (cry) for twenty minutes.
27. I (have) my motorbike repaired many times.
28. How many times you (see) her since she moved to the city?
29. She is waiting for the doctor. She (stand) here for four hours.
30. She (look) for another job until now.

Your answer:

21....................................... **22**.......................................
23....................................... **24**.......................................
25....................................... **26**.......................................
27....................................... **28**.......................................
29....................................... **30**.......................................

31. They (play) the game since 7:00 A.M. I wish they would stop playing it.
32. Hurry! The bus (come).
33. They (live) in the city for five years now.
34. She (work) on her English assignment for five days, but she (not finish) it.
35. Fortunately, he (give up) smoking recently.
36. John and Fred (not finish) their homework yet.
37. She (just apply) for the position of a receptionist.
38. I am getting tired. I (cut) grass in the garden since 8:00 A.M.
39. They (explain) the lesson to us so far.
40. You (receive) my letters and cards yet?

Your answer:

31....................................... **32**.......................................
33....................................... **34**.......................................
35....................................... **36**.......................................
37....................................... **38**.......................................
39....................................... **40**.......................................

41. I (buy) the computer since I graduated from the university.
42. I (collect) stamps for 10 years. It is a hobby of mine.
43. They (already give) me the information.
44. It (rain) very hard. It (rain) for 15 days.
45. They (drink) coffee and listening to music.

46. She (learn) a great deal of Japanese since January.
47. We (never see) that television program.
48. They (return) to France since last month.
49. This is the first time she (fly) to Tokyo.
50. The weather (be) warm ever since last week.

Your answer:

41…………………………………… 42……………………………………
43…………………………………… 44……………………………………
45…………………………………… 46……………………………………
47…………………………………… 48……………………………………
49…………………………………… 50……………………………………

51. The students (be) here since the beginning of the semester.
52. She (be) ill for 7 days.
53. He (wash) his hands. He (repair) the car.
54. You look tired. I (not sleep) well for days.
55. You (make) a phone call yet?
56. They (pass) the law recently.
57. He needs some water. He (make) some cakes.
58. Many students in my class (never see) the picture.
59. I (look) forward to hearing from you. I (not meet) you since we left school.
60. He (watch) TV to relax. He (repair) my machine for hours.

Your answer:

51…………………………………… 52……………………………………
53…………………………………… 54……………………………………
55…………………………………… 56……………………………………
57…………………………………… 58……………………………………
59…………………………………… 60……………………………………

Exercise 8: Hãy dùng thì Tương lai đơn hoặc Be going to + V nguyên hoặc thì Tương lai hoàn thành để hoàn thành các câu sau.

1. We must hurry or we (miss) the train.
2. I don't have enough money to buy this dictionary. Don't worry, I (lend) you.
3. They (meet) you there until you come back tomorrow.
4. It's difficult for her to carry the luggage. I (help) her.
5. We (go) out when the rain stops.
6. I (visit) my parents this summer. I haven't heard from them for two years.
7. I (buy) a book this morning, but I don't have enough money.
8. By the time you come, she (go) to bed.
9. They (travel) to Ha Noi Capital by tomorrow morning.
10. By the time you (finish) your homework, they (prepare) the dinner.

Your answer:

1.................................... 2......................................

3.................................... 4......................................

5.................................... 6......................................

7.................................... 8......................................

9.................................... 10....................................

11. They (build) the house by the time you arrive in the city.

12. By the end of this year I (finish) my English course.

13. I (visit) you by July next year.

14. You did your homework carelessly. I'm sorry, I (not make) the mistake again.

15. Tom and Fred (be) at the meeting tomorrow.

16. We (see) her tonight.

17. We (leave) here the day after tomorrow.

18. I (not phone) you until the sun rises.

19. By the end of the month I (finish) writing this book.

20. By the time they arrive at the airport, the plane (take) off.

Your answer:

11.................................... 12....................................

13.................................... 14....................................

15.................................... 16....................................

17.................................... 18....................................

19.................................... 20....................................

ADVANCED SECTION – PHẦN NÂNG CAO

Exercise 9

1. I distinctly remember (pay) him. I gave him 10 dollars.

2. I lit the fire at 6:00 and it (burn) brightly when Tom came in at 7:00.

3. By the time I recovered from the shock, he (disappear) round the corner.

4. You (walk) too fast. That's why you are tired.

5. My uncle (make) a speech on Friday.

6. By this time next year I (save) 500 dollars.

7. It's very cold. Mr. Taylor, who has been ill recently, is walking along the road without a coat. He (wear) a warm coat.

8. French is essential in this job. All the telephonists speak it. If they (not know) French, they (not understand) half the callers.

9. George isn't here and I need him. I wish he (be) here.

10. The letter (not arrive) yet.

Your answer:

1.................................... 2..

3.................................... 4..

5.................................... 6..

7.................................... 8..

9.................................... 10..

11. I wish I (know) more foreign languages.

12. It was a sad movie that made me (cry).

13. He (work) for that bank since last summer.

14. He, not less than I, (be) glad to meet you.

15. I can't stand (listen) to their complaints any longer.

16. One – third of mangoes (be) ripe already.

17. All the tents (be) set up by the time they reach the mountain top.

18. I didn't remember her name. I wish I (remember) her name.

19. Thousands of people (be) homeless since 1999.

20. I want (talk) to the person who broke that cup.

Your answer:

11.................................... 12..

13.................................... 14..

15.................................... 16..

17.................................... 18..

19.................................... 20..

21. I really must have my watch (repair).

22. I apologized for (disturb) to you.

23. Listen, I (hear) a rattling noise at the front door.

24. Two miles (be) enough for her to jog every morning.

25. When Daisy (come) back from the beach, she (look) very red.

26. Look! Her eyes (be) red and wet. She (cry).

27. Why do you keep (look) back? Are you afraid of (follow)?

28. I (finish) everything by the time you (get) back tomorrow.

29. You ever (be) England? – Yes, I (go) there 3 years ago.

30. If she (work) harder, she (not fail) the exam last year.

Your answer:

21.................................... 22..

23.................................... 24..

25.................................... 26..

27.................................... 28..

29.................................. 30..

31. It is difficult to get used to (eat) with chopsticks.

32. The chairman suggested (hold) another meeting next week.

33. I prefer (drive) to (be driver).

34. Would you mind (lend) me 5 dollars? I forgot (cash) a cheque.

35. I'll never forget (meet) her years ago.

36. She was made (pay) back the money.

37. Of course, I'm not going to give her a gold ring. If I (give) her a gold ring, she (sell) it.

38. Peter used (go) to the zoo when he was a boy.

39. If the storm had not swept through the rice field last year, our crop (be) very good.

40. When I came to school, everybody (be) there.

Your answer:

31.................................. 32..
33.................................. 34..
35.................................. 36..
37.................................. 38..
39.................................. 40..

41. I suggest that you (go) out with some friends.

42. Since when he (give) up smoking?

43. He never goes home before he (finish) his work.

44. They (build) a new house in this corner of the street right now.

45. My friends (join) the army when they finished their school.

46. How many films you (see) this month?

47. When they arrived at the scene, everything (take) away so they could see nothing.

48. In a few minutes' time, when the clock (strike) six, I (wait) here for three hours.

49. When we (see) them last night, they (sing).

50. I (tell) a lie if I said that I (like) you.

Your answer:

41.................................. 42..
43.................................. 44..
45.................................. 46..
47.................................. 48..
49.................................. 50..

51. I hope it (not rain) when the bride (leave) the church tomorrow.

52. During the last few weeks I (be) very busy.

53. I (write) a novel for the last two years but he hasn't finished it yet.

54. She was late because she (have) an accident.

55. We (live) here for the last six months and have just decided to move.

56. Before that mosquito (bite) me, I'm going to kill it.

57. I was just writing a cheque when I remembered I (have) nothing in the bank.

58. Your son is much taller than when I last saw him. He (grow) up a lot.

59. The man sitting next to me was nervous because he (not fly) before.

60. If you (swim) this afternoon, you shouldn't eat too much now.

Your answer:

51...................................... **52**......................................
53...................................... **54**......................................
55...................................... **56**......................................
57...................................... **58**......................................
59...................................... **60**......................................

Exercise 10

1. By the end of this month, he (be) here for ten years.

2. If you have written the letter I (post) it.

3. When I came here, he (watch) TV.

4. After John (wash) his clothes, he began to study.

5. The study of languages (be) interesting.

6. I wish I (know) his address.

7. Did you remember (buy) a newspaper on the way home?

8. Neither the president nor his representatives (be) to attend the meeting.

9. They let us park bicycles here but they won't allow us (park) motorcycles.

10. He looked frightened as if he (see) a ghost.

Your answer:

1...................................... **2**......................................
3...................................... **4**......................................
5...................................... **6**......................................
7...................................... **8**......................................
9...................................... **10**......................................

11. Coming into the room, he (see) Mary where he (leave) her.

12. I'm sure you (forget) me by the time I (come) back in five years.

13. It's time we (go). If we (not leave) now, we (miss) the last train.

14. As Hung and I (come) down the steps, we nearly (run) into my father.

15. I've considered (ask) him (raise) my salary, but I don't think he can afford (do) it.

16. When we (arrive) in London tonight, it probably (rain).

17. Why you all (laugh)? Roger (tell) you his funny stories?

18. If you've finished (use) the typewriter, I'd like (borrow) it for a while so that I can get used to (type) with that machine.

19. All beautiful buildings in HaNoi (destroy) by exhausted gas from cars and motorbikes. We must do something about this.

20. I (make) cakes. That's why my hands are all covered with flour.

Your answer:

11....................................... **12..**
13....................................... **14..**
15....................................... **16..**
17....................................... **18..**
19....................................... **20..**

21. He refused (join) us on the trip to the mountains.

22. I suggest (go) there on foot.

23. No sooner I (arrive) than I (send) her a letter to say that I had a present for her.

24. Come in, please. I (wait) for you long.

25. I (not see) her since we (leave) school.

26. The man who (rescue) had been in the sea for ten hours.

27. Hardly he (take up) the book when the phone (ring).

28. We didn't enjoy the trip because of the rain. If it (not rain), the trip (be) more enjoyable.

29. Pupils are made (work) hard at school.

30. Each of the nurses (report) to the operating room when his or her name is called.

Your answer:

21....................................... **22..**
23....................................... **24..**
25....................................... **26..**
27....................................... **28..**
29....................................... **30..**

31. I (not see) her since we left school.

32. He said the earth (be) round.

33. Mark Twain (know) for his stories about life on the Mississippi.

34. I remember (pay) him. I gave him 5 dollars.

35. Can you stop walking soon? I (start) to feel tired.

36. What would you do if you (be) in my situation?

37. The game (play) well by both teams last Sunday.

38. If you press that button, a receptionist (come) to help you.

39. The children enjoy (allow) to stay up late when there is something special on TV.

40. We were a few minutes late, so the film (already start) when we (get) to the cinema.

Your answer:

31...................................... **32**......................................
33...................................... **34**......................................
35...................................... **36**......................................
37...................................... **38**......................................
39...................................... **40**......................................

41. He wishes that he (work) harder, but it (be) too late now.

42. – "I don't feel well enough to go to the station to meet him."
- "I will meet him for you. But how I (recognize) him?"
- "He's small and fain, and he (wear) a black and white school cap."

43. Since he (buy) a new car, he (drive) to work every day.

44. I (tell) a lie if I said that I (like) you.

45. It took a moment before Nick (realize) he (offer) a cigarette by a stranger.

46. We (not move) to Paris until we (find) a flat there to rent.

47. The children (not go) to bed unless they (have) a glass of milk.

48. If you (not do) well in the test, you (have to) do it again.

49. Once you (try) "Glowhite" toothpaste, you (never use) anything else.

50. Hurry up or you (miss) the ferry.

Your answer:

41...................................... **42**......................................
43...................................... **44**......................................
45...................................... **46**......................................
47...................................... **48**......................................

49.................................. 50...

Exercise 11: Choose the best answer (A, B, C or D).

1. Up to the present, they (understand) what life is.
A. had understood B. have understood
C. were understanding D. are understanding

2. She'll wait until you (finish) your housework.
A. will finish B. are finishing
C. have finished D. will have finished

3. It's high time you (write) to your parents.
A. have written B. are writing
C. wrote D. were writing

4. When I (be) young, I (live) with my family.
A. am – lived B. was – was living
C. was – lived D. was – had lived

5. By the end of this year, she (leave) Hue for Da Nang.
A. will leave B. has left
C. will have left D. is leaving

6. It was the second time I (ever, see) the famous singer.
A. have ever seen B. had ever seen
C. will have ever seen D. would have ever seen

7. This time next week, we (live) in Da Lat.
A. will live B. have lived
C. will have lived D. will be living

8. If we (have) enough money, we would have bought a new car.
A. had had B. would have
C. are having D. had

9. The exam papers are scored by machine. The students (tell) their results in a few days.
A. will be told B. are being told
C. have been told D. have told

10. We (not see) them since they (get) married.
A. didn't see – got B. hadn't seen – got
C. haven't seen – have gotten D. haven't seen – got

Your answer:

1............ 2............. 3.............. 4............. 5............
6............ 7............. 8.............. 9............. 10...........

11. When we (open) the door, he (work) on a computer.
A. opened – was working B. have opened – was working
C. opened – worked D. opened – have worked

12. They (walk) for four hours, so they are tired.
A. had been walking B. were walking
C. have been walking D. will have walk

13. If it doesn't rain soon, we (suffer) a drought.
A. will suffer B. will have suffered
C. suffer D. would suffer

14. I wish I (not attend) the meeting last night. It was boring.
A. didn't attend B. hadn't attended
C. haven't attended D. wouldn't attend

15. I would rather you (pay) for the damage immediately.
A. pay B. would pay
C. have paid D. paid

16. By the time the plane takes off, they (arrive) at the airport.
A. had arrived B. will arrive
C. will have arrived D. will be arriving

17. We (find) a solution to the problem so far. Don't worry.
A. will find B. have found
C. are finding D. had found

18. If you (not smoke), you wouldn't have died of lung cancer.
A. don't smoke B. hadn't smoked
C. didn't smoke D. haven't smoked

19. She looked frightened as if she (see) a ghost.
A. was seeing B. had seen
C. has seen D. will have seen

20. I (work) for the company for twenty years.
A. am working B. had been working
C. have been working D. worked

Your answer:

11............ 12............ 13............ 14............ 15............
16............ 17............ 18............ 19............ 20............

21. I (know) all of the new students very well now.
A. have been known B. knows
C. had known D. was known

22. We (have) no trouble with the lessons up to now.
A. are having B. have had
C. had had D. had

23. By the time you (type) this letter, they (leave) the room.
A. type – will leave B. type – will have left
C. will type – will leave D. type – will have left

24. If we (have) enough money, we (lend) you some more.
A. have – would lend B. had – would lend
C. will have – lend D. had – would lend

25. It's ages since we last (enjoy) ourselves so much.
A. have enjoyed B. had enjoyed
C. will enjoy D. enjoyed

26. We had to stop working. We (work) hard for six hours.
A. have worked B. have been working
C. are working D. had been working

27. At present, I (write) another book.
A. am writing B. have written
C. wrote D. was writing

28. He feel tired because he (work) hard for months.
A. are working B. has been working
C. had been working D. will have worked

29. We would have saved the boy if we (arrive) in time.
A. would arrive B. will arrive
C. arrived D. had arrived

30. They (make) much progress for five years.
A. have made B. are making
C. made D. will make

Your answer:

21........... 22............. 23............... 24............ 25............
26............ 27............. 28............... 29............ 30............

31. The plumber is repairing the leak in that pipe. He (do) this work for two hours.
A. has been doing B. was doing
C. had been doing D. is doing

32. How many picture books you (read) so far?
A. are you reading B. did you read
C. have you read D. do you read

33. At this time next week, I (study) at the university.
A. will study B. have studied
C. will be studying D. am studying

34. What you (do) when I (phone) at 8:00 last night?
A. had done – phoned B. were you doing – phoned
C. were you doing – had phoned D. have you done – phoned

35. He asked me if I (see) that film.
A. have seen B. am seeing
C. would have seen D. had seen

36. It (rain) heavily since lunchtime.
A. has rained B. was raining
C. is raining D. will rain

37. The streets (be) slippery. It (rain) last night.
A. are – must have rained B. are – has rained
C. were – has rained D. were – had been raining

38. This house looks very old. They (not paint) it for years.
A. didn't paint B. haven't painted

C. haven't been painted
D. don't painted

39. No sooner I (phone) him than he (cause) the accident.
A. had phoned – caused
B. had I phoned – caused
C. did I phone – caused
D. have I phoned – caused

40. I suggest she (study) harder for her exam.
A. study
B. will have studied
C. is studying
D. studies

Your answer:

31………… 32…………. 33…………... 34…………. 35…………
36………… 37…………. 38…………... 39…………. 40…………

ANSWER KEY

Exercise 1

1. cancelled
2. did you get – took
3. didn't write
4. met – was
5. watched – didn't finish
6. gave up
7. slept
8. didn't teach
9. spoke – approved
10. admitted
11. said – went
12. succeeded
13. didn't pay
14. ate
15. entered – sat
16. knew
17. put – came
18. had – stayed
19. heard – was
20. showed
21. left
22. misunderstood
23. found
24. built
25. promised – broke
26. burned
27. drank
28. hid
29. lost
30. stole – was sent
31. omitted
32. stopped
33. played – won
34. did you make
35. sold
36. brought
37. explained
38. taught
39. received
40. carried
41. failed – didn't study
42. put – went
43. bought
44. booked
45. borrowed
46. lent
47. copied
48. described
49. agreed
50. forgot
51. sent
52. held
53. kept
54. paid
55. wore
56. torn

57. fell – hurt
58. caught
59. felt
60. rang

Exercise 2

1. has – is having
2. don't have
3. likes – is listening
4. are writing
5. are you doing – am watching
6. drives
7. goes – works
8. visit
9. are doing
10. am reading
11. goes
12. fly
13. is – is answering
14. is making – makes
15. starts – finishes
16. is knocking
17. rains – is raining
18. are cutting – help
19. is sitting – sits
20. is studying
21. isn't
22. know – are
23. is teaching – is
24. work – work
25. are reviewing
26. are you doing – are waiting
27. am having
28. are flying – visit
29. go – finish
30. are reading – like
31. are sleeping
32. is working
33. do we eat
34. am finding
35. am speaking
36. are running – is feeding
37. is taking
38. has
39. looks – is painting
40. gets
41. is – is reading
42. are preparing – am having
43. drinks – is drinking
44. am cleaning
45. is ringing
46. hates – eats
47. is driving
48. are building
49. are studying
50. is rising
51. is feeding
52. want
53. has
54. need
55. lives
56. am having
57. are going
58. are swimming
59. is coming
60. is fishing – fishes

Exercise 3

1. studied
2. received
3. were you doing – phoned
4. was standing – saw
5. were sleeping
6. did you last see – saw
7. was walking – saw
8. was having – was having
9. was talking – heard
10. did you take
11. had – avoided
12. opened – lost
13. glanced – sat
14. were writing – knocked
15. visited
16. rained – cancelled

17. was looking - called
18. were they doing
19. damaged – made
20. bought
21. was driving – saw
22. called – saw
23. was repairing – brought
24. turned – was playing
25. annoyed
26. said – appeared
27. appreared
28. got
29. was making – said
30. won – didn't give
31. applied – was turned down
32. was destroying – went
33. arrived
34. were making up – were talking
35. was standing – happened
36. did you do – practised
37. returned
38. delivered
39. put – glanced – said
40. was carrying – broke
41. arrived
42. were drawing
43. gave – told
44. was born
45. flew
46. lived
47. had
48. was – decided
49. was working – broke into
50. was washing – was cleaning
51. bought
52. saw
53. came
54. rang
55. rained
56. arrived
57. went
58. gave
59. didn't believe
60. was watching – shouted

Exercise 4

1. has taught
2. haven't met
3. has waited
4. has rained
5. has worked - left
6. Have you ever been
7. has risen
8. have just finished
9. has improved
10. haven't build
11. haven't done
12. have never tasted
13. have visited
14. have mentioned
15. have worked
16. have already had
17. have read
18. has increased
19. has changed
20. haven't heard
21. arrived
22. have never been
23. have seen
24. have moved
25. has been
26. rained – stayed
27. lived
28. have met
29. have seen
30. ran
31. have repaired
32. met
33. performed
34. tested
35. have learned
36. studied
37. died – didn't water
38. stayed – went

39. haven't flown
40. made – paid
41. travelled
42. Have you been
43. entered
44. have talked
45. has arrived
46. wrote
47. was
48. spoke – agreed
49. spent
50. was
51. have ever met
52. drove – had
53. got – didn't have
54. have never travelled
55. have phoned
56. lasted
57. failed
58. apologized
59. have been – appeared
60. got – heard – didn't know – happened

Exercise 5

1. lives - works
2. have had
3. has finished
4. is writing
5. spends
6. spend
7. work – work
8. am – have forgotten
9. am reading
10. have met
11. am looking
12. are having
13. is talking
14. come
15. have studied – miss
16. goes
17. have made
18. is answering
19. is
20. have lived
21. needs
22. are wasting – have
23. have saved
24. have made
25. don't know
26. is sitting
27. is – have been
28. haven't told
29. make
30. lives
31. watches
32. have waited
33. know – has
34. is taking
35. is taking – is – have visited
36. don't know
37. is playing
38. am writing – is cleaning
39. is wearing
40. hate
41. are looking – have been
42. spends - loves
43. isnot - goes
44. checks
45. is
46. have lived – am getting
47. belongs – has bought
48. is – is having
49. are you buying
50. am going
51. have spent
52. haven't made
53. have built
54. Have you applied
55. have just asked
56. have already prepared
57. have understood
58. has left

59. has been
60. haven't received

Exercise 6

1. came – had left
2. had taken off – arrived
3. answered – had thought
4. have listened
5. had answered - came
6. had learned – flew
7. postponed
8. had he gone – appeared
9. had finished
10. had hardly said – went
11. have complained
12. had put – rained
13. has destroyed - appreared
14. turned – locked
15. realized – hadn't fastened
16. have worked
17. has lasted
18. had built
19. hasn't changed
20. had no sooner read – rang
21. played
22. found
23. had left
24. have been
25. died – was
26. became
27. had worked – retired
28. had met
29. was
30. was
31. heard – had disappeared
32. had put - came
33. had known - applied
34. left – has changed
35. rang – opened
36. haven't seen – moved
37. saw – phoned – sent
38. stopped – had happened
39. had known – shouted
40. have spent
41. have understood
42. have written
43. had found
44. had spoken – met
45. had sold – bought
46. haven't believed – realized
47. has lived – left
48. have talked
49. has just gone
50. have flown
51. didn't say
52. had they started – rained
53. had she entered – went
54. had told
55. had
56. shouted – saw
57. haven't finished
58. graduated
59. became
60. arrived

Exercise 7

1. have tried – haven't succeeded
2. has been running
3. haven't seen
4. has had
5. have been sleeping
6. has been resting – has had
7. has been waiting
8. am visiting – have never been
9. have you been learning
10. haven't come – am visiting
11. have been working
12. have read
13. is singing
14. is listening
15. is rising
16. hasn't been
17. have been writing –

haven't finished
18. Have you ever met
19. am typing
20. have been discussing – haven't found
21. have found
22. have died
23. Has Mr. Thanh been telling
24. has rung
25. have done
26. have been crying
27. have had
28. have you seen
29. has been standing
30. has been looking
31. have been playing
32. is coming
33. have been living
34. has been working – hasn't finished
35. has given
36. haven't finished
37. has just applied
38. have been cutting
39. have explained
40. Have you received
41. have bought
42. have been collecting
43. have already given
44. is raining – has been raining
45. are drinking
46. has been learning
47. have never seen
48. have returned
49. has flown
50. has been
51. have been
52. has been
53. is washing – has been repairing
54. haven't been sleeping
55. Have you made
56. have passed
57. is making
58. have never seen
59. am looking – haven't met
60. is watching – has been repairing

Exercise 8

1. will miss
2. will lend
3. will meet
4. will help
5. will go
6. am going to visit
7. am going to buy
8. will have gone
9. will have travelled
10. finish – shall have prepared
11. will have built
12. will have finished
13. will have visited
14. won't make
15. are going to be
16. are going to see
17. are going to leave
18. won't phone
19. will have finished
20. will have taken

Exercise 9

1. paying
2. was burning
3. had disappeared
4. have been walking
5. is making
6. will have saved
7. should have worn
8. didn't know – wouldn't understand
9. were
10. has not arrived

11. knew
12. cry
13. has been working
14. is
15. listening
16. are
17. will have been
18. had remembered
19. have been
20. to talk
21. repaired
22. disturbing
23. am hearing
24. are
25. came – looked
26. are – has been crying
27. looking – being followed
28. will have finished – get
29. Have you ever been – went
30. had worked – wouldn't have failed
31. eating
32. holding
33. driving – being driven
34. lending – to cash
35. meeting
36. to pay
37. gave – would sell
38. to go
39. would have been
40. was
41. go/should go
42. did he give
43. finishes
44. are building/are going to build
45. joined
46. have you seen
47. had been taken
48. strikes – will have been waiting
49. saw – were singing
50. would tell – liked
51. will not be raining – leaves
52. have been
53. have been writing
54. had had
55. have lived
56. bites
57. had had
58. has grown
59. has not flown
60. are you going to swim

Exercise 10

1. will have been
2. will post
3. watching
4. had washed
5. is
6. knew – had known
7. to buy
8. were
9. to park
10. had seen
11. saw – had left
12. will have forgotten
13. went – don't leave – will miss
14. were coming – ran

15. asking – to raise – to do
16. arrive – will probably be raining
17. are you all laughing – has Roger been telling
18. using – to borrow – typing
19. are being destroyed
20. have been making
21. to join
22. going
23. had I arrived – sent
24. have waited
25. haven't seen – left
26. was rescued
27. had he taken up – rang
28. hadn't rained – would have been
29. to work
30. is reporting
31. am starting
32. haven't seen
33. were
34. was
35. was played
36. is known
37. will come
38. paying
39. being allowed
40. had already started – got
41. had worked – is
42. shall I recognize – will be wearing
43. bought – has driven/has been driving
44. would tell – like
45. realized – was being offered
46. are not moving – have found
47. won't go – have
48. do not do – will have to
49. have tried - will never use
50. will miss

Exercise 11

1 B – have understood
2 C – have finished
3 C - wrote
4 C – was – lived
5 C – will have left
6 B – had ever seen
7 D – will be living
8 A – had had
9 A – will be told
10 D – haven't sent – got
11 A – opened – was working
12 C – have been walking
13 A – will suffer
14 B – hadn't attended
15 D - paid
16 C – will have arrived
17 B – have found
18 B – hadn't smoked
19 B – had seen
20 C – have been working
21 B - knows
22 B – have had
23 D – type – will have left
24 D – had – would lend
25 D - enjoyed
26 D – had been working
27 A – am writing
28 B – has been working
29 D – had arrived
30 A – have made
31 A – has been doing
32 C – have you read

33 C – will be studying
34 B – were you doing – phoned
35 D – had seen
36 A – has rained
37 A – are – must have rained
38 B – haven't painted
39 B – had I phoned - caused
40 A - study

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 3: REPORTED SPEED (CÂU TƯỜNG THUẬT)

A. Lý thuyết

I. Định nghĩa: Câu tường thuật gián tiếp là câu thuật lại những lời nói trực tiếp do một người khác phát biểu.

Ex; They said: "We will visit her."

They said that they would visit her.

II. Phân loại các dạng câu tường thuật gián tiếp.

Thông thường câu tường thuật gián tiếp được chia thành một trong ba loại câu sau đây:

1. Câu phát biểu: khi muốn đổi một câu phát biểu trực tiếp sang câu tường thuật gián tiếp, chúng ta cần phải:

A. Giữ nguyên động từ tường thuật SAY hoặc đổi SAY TO sang TELL

Ex: He said: "She very kind to me."

He said that she was very kind to him.

He said to me she was very kind to him.

B. Đổi dấu hai chấm (:) thành THAT và bỏ dấu ngoặc kép ("...")

C. Chuyển đổi các đại từ nhân xưng và tính từ sở hữu cho thích hợp với ngữ cảnh trong câu tường thuật gián tiếp.

Ex: He said: "I will phone you."

He said that he would phone me.

D. Phải tuân theo các quy luật về sự hoà hợp các Thì của động từ như sau:

DIRECT SPEECH		(INDIRECT) REPORTED SPEECH
simple present	→	simple past
present continuous	→	past continuous

present perfect	→	past perfect
simple past	→	past perfect
past continuous	→	past perfect continuous
future perfect	→	conditional perfect
simple conditional	→	conditional perfect

Ex: He said: “I go to school.”

He said that he went to school.

E. Nếu trong câu trực tiếp có sử dụng các từ chỉ vị trí, nơi chốn và các từ chỉ thời gian thì các từ đó cũng phải được thay đổi cho phù hợp khi chuyển sang câu gián tiếp.

Direct Speech		**Reported Speech**
this	→	that
these	→	those
now	→	then
ago	→	before
today	→	that day
tonight	→	that night
tomorrow	→	the next day the following day the day after
yesterday	→	the previous day the day before
next week	→	the following week the week after
last week	→	the previous week the week before

Các động từ khiếm khuyết được đổi sang dạng quá khứ.

Direct Speech		**Reported Speech**
shall	→	should
will	→	would

can → could
may → might
must → had to
needn't → didn't have to

Ex: They said: "We went to school yesterday."

They said to me they had gone to school the day before.

Chú ý: Khi các động từ tường thuật (say, tell ……..) ở ***thì hiện tại đơn***, chúng ta ***không cần*** phải thực hiện theo quy luật của sự hoà hợp động từ như trên.

Ex: He says: "She is a teacher"

He says she is a teacher.

- Chúng ta ***không cần*** tuân theo quy luật của sự hoà hợp động từ như trên khi câu trực tiếp phát biểu là một ***sự kiện hiển nhiên***.

Ex: He said: "The sun rises in the east"

He said that the sun rises in the east.

- Chúng ta ***không cần*** đổi động từ ở câu trực tiếp nếu nó được dùng ở thì ***Past Perfect***

Ex: They said: "We had gone to the shop yesterday."

They said that they had gone to the shop the day before.

2. Câu hỏi: Muốn đổi câu trực tiếp là một câu hỏi sang câu tường thuật gián tiếp, chúng ta cần phải:

-Thực hiện các quy luật hoà hợp của động từ cũng như chuyển đổi các đại từ nhân xưng, tính từ sở hữu và các từ chỉ nơi chốn, thời gian như khi chuyển đổi câu phát biểu trực tiếp sang câu gián tiếp.

- Đổi động từ tường thuật **SAY** hoặc **TELL** sang **ASK**, **REQUIRE** hoặc **WONDER**.

- Dùng ***WHETHER*** hay ***IF*** để bắt đầu câu gián tiếp khi câu hỏi trực tiếp không bắt đầu bằng ***Từ Để Hỏi*** và đương nhiên từ **THAT** cũng được lược bỏ.

-Khi câu trực tiếp là một ***câu hỏi*** có từ để hỏi như: what, why, when, where, who, how, chúng ta sử dụng lại từ để hỏi ấy và chuyển câu hỏi sang câu gián tiếp ở dạng ***câu khẳng định*** và tất nhiên dấu hai chấm (:) cũng được bỏ đi.

Ex: He said: "Where did you go yesterday?"

He asked me where I had gone the day before.

He said: "Do you like this book?"

He asked me if I liked that book.

3. Câu mệnh lệnh: Khi đổi một câu nói trực tiếp ở dạng mệnh lệnh, ta cần phải:

- Đổi các động từ tường thuật **SAY** hoặc **TELL** thành **ASK, COMMAND, REQUEST, ORDER** …
- Động từ ở mệnh đề cách trong câu trực tiếp được đổi thành động từ nguyên mẫu ở câu tường thuật gián tiếp.

Nếu câu trực tiếp là một mệnh lệnh phủ định thì ta dùng **NOT** trước động từ nguyên mẫu ở câu tường thuật gián tiếp.

Ex: He said: "Go out."

He ordered me to go out.

He said: "Don't go out."

He advised me not to go out.

B. Bài tập

Hãy chuyển các câu sau sang dạng câu tường thuật.

EXERCISE 1

1. "I don't like hot weather," he said.

→ **He said that** ……………………………………………………………

2. "I have been working here for five years," she said.

→ **She said that** …………………………………………………………

3. “We don’t want to discuss the matter again,” they said.

→ **They said that** ....

4. “She can’t swim,” he said.

→ **He said that** ....

5. “We like listening to music at night,” he said.

→ **He said that**..

6. “She drinks milk every morning,” he said.

→ **He said that**..

7. “They worked hard yesterday,” he said.

→ **He said that**..

8. “They didn’t study hard enough, so they failed the exam again,” he said.

→ **He said that**..

9. “She bought this dictionary last week,” they said.

→ **They said that**..

10. “Mai was here yesterday,” she said.

→ **She said that**...

EXERCISE 2

1. “We can’t understand these words,” Peter said.

→ **Peter said that** ....

2. “I did the thing without any difficulty,” she said.

→ **She said that** ....

3. “Your English will improve very quickly,” he said.

→ **He said that** ....

4. “The secretary hasn’t finished typing the letter yet,” he said.

→ **He said that** ....

5. “We are not teachers,” they said.

→ **They said that** ....

6. “I will visit you tomorrow,” he said.

→ **He said** ....

7. “I have read this story several times,” she said.

→ **She said that** ....

8. "It takes me two hours to read this minute," he said.

→ **He said that** ....

9. "They cancelled the match yesterday," he said.

→ **He said that** ....

10. "They are reading a book now," she said.

→ **She said that** ....

EXERCISE 3

1. "I have been to Paris," Mary said.

→ **Mary said that** ....

2. "I jog around the lake in the morning," she said.

→ **She said that** ....

3. "We are watching TV tonight," they said.

→ **They said that** ....

4. "We like drinking coffee at night," they said.

→ **They said that** ....

5. "He gave up smoking last year," she said.

→ **She said that** ....

6. "I had my father repaired this car," he said.

→ **He said that** ....

7. "She will finish her homework next week," he said.

→ **He said that** ....

8. "We were walking when we saw the terrible accident," they said.

→ **They said that** ....

9. "I have been studying Japanese for five years," he said.

→ **He said that** ....

10. "I had met her before I spoke to you," he said.

→ **He said that** ....

EXERCISE 4

1. "If I had had money, I would have lent you," she said.

→ **She said that** ....

2. "The sun goes around the earth," he said.

→ **He said that** ....

3. "She has been here since you left for Thailand," he said.

→ **He said that** ....

4. "I have to leave the party before 9:00 P.M," he said.

→ **He said that** ....

5. "You must present the topic naturally," he said.

→ **He said that** ....

6. "He made a wonderful speech last week," they said.

→ **They said that** ....

7. "They have built her house since last year," he said.

→ **He said that** ....

8. "She can speak English," they said.

→ **They said that** ....

9. "They behaved badly last night," she said.

→ **She said that** ....

10. "She was absent from school because of her illness," the teacher said.

→ **The teacher said** ....

EXERCISE 5

1. "They didn't listen to the music last night," he said.

→ **He said that** ....

2. "He doesn't want to eat fish," she said.

→ **She said that** ....

3. "We avoided meeting him three days ago," they said.

→ **They said that** ....

4. "I am helping my father paint this wall," he said.

→ **He said that** ....

5. "By the time he arrived, we had left the room," they said.

→They said that……………………………………………………………

6. "They are making much noise," he said.

→ He said ……………………………………………………………………

7. "He can't take up this game," she said.

→ She said that…………………………………………………………

8. "The sun rises in the east," they said.

→They said………………………………………………………………

9. "They didn't succeed in persuading him to accept this job," she said.

→ She said that …………………………………………………………

10. "She is the most intelligent woman I have ever met," he said.

→ He said that ……………………………………………………………

EXERCISE 6

1. "They are from England," she said to me.

→ She told me that ………………………………………………………

2. "We can't play as well as we used to," they said to me.

→ They told me …………………………………………………………

3. "We can't help you with this work," they said to her.

→ They told her …………………………………………………………

4. "He devoted his life to education," she said to them.

→ She told them …………………………………………………………

5. "The flight to Canada was cancelled yesterday evening," he said to me.

→ He told me ………………………………………………………………

6. "They are having lunch with Mr.Minh at the restaurant," she said to us.

→ She told us………………………………………………………………

7. "They had pointed out the fire before the firemen arrived."

→ She told me………………………………………………………………

8. "He died of heart disease," they said to her.

→ They told her……………………………………………………………

9. "They caused the terrible accident because they drove carelessly."

→ She told me………………………………………………………………

10. "I got lost," she said to me.

→ **She told me** ....

EXERCISE 7

1. "They have been working in Viet Nam since 2006," he said to me.

→ **He told me** ....

2. "We enjoyed ourselves so much last night," they said to her.

→ **They told her** ....

3. "I have to meet my president this morning," he said to her.

→ **He told her** ....

4. "We weren't here last year," I said to him.

→ **I told him** ....

5. "This girl answered my questions very well," he said to me.

→ **He told me** ....

6. "We made a phone call abroad yesterday," she said to him.

→ **She told him** ....

7. "They visited my grandmother some years ago," she said to us.

→ **She told us**...

8. "They have just made up the joke," she said to me.

→ **She told me** ....

9. "They opened this shop in October," she said to him.

→ **She told him** ....

10. "We gave him this information this afternoon," they said to me.

→ **They told me** ....

EXERCISE 8

1. "You must report the accident to the policeman," she said to me.

→ **She told me that**...

2. "I will be with you wherever you go," he said to her.

→ **He told her that** ....

3. "She sang very well last night," they said to him.

→ **They told him that ....**

4. "She cut herself two days ago," they said to me.

→ **They told me that..**

5. "They drank a cup of tea and said nothing," she said to me.

→ **She told me that...**

6. "The two men ran as fast as possible in order not to be recognized," they said to the policeman.

→ **They told the policeman that ....**

7. "We saw two accidents while we were walking to the zoo," she said to me.

→ **She told me that...**

8. "They will be there tomorrow," we said to the man.

→ **We told the man that...**

9. "She was sent to the hospital last week," he said to us.

→ **He told us that..**

10. "I won't answer his questions," she said to me.

→ **She told me that...**

EXERCISE 9

1. "They closed the front door when it rained," she said to me.

→ **She told me that...**

2. "She hasn't finished typing this book yet," he said to us.

→ **He told us that..**

3. "It may rain," he said to me.

→ **He told me that...**

4. "You should read this magazine yesterday," he said to her.

→ **He told her that...**

5. "If I had had more time, I would have visited the palace," he said to me.

→ **He told me that...**

6. "I have visited many interests of places in the city recently," he said.

→ **He told me that**...

7. "She didn't buy fish for lunch," he said to me.

→ **He told me that**...

8. "She doesn't get on well with the manager," he said to me.

→ **He told me that**...

9. "She corrected these sentences for me," I said to him.

→ **I told him that** ....

10. "I don't know why she is sad," he said to me.

→ **He told me that**...

EXERCISE 10

1. "Where are you from?" she asked me.

→ **She asked** ....

2. "How do you like my new dress, John?" she asked.

→ **She asked John**...

3. "Why didn't you buy this dictionary? It is very useful for me." She asked.

→ **She asked me**...

4. "Where was your father last night?" he asked me.

→ **He asked me**...

5. "What were you doing at 4:00 yesterday evening?" he asked her.

→ **He asked her**...

6. "When did you arrive in New York City?" they asked her.

→ **They asked her**...

7. "What does she want?" she asked me.

→ **She asked me**...

8. "When were you born?" he asked me.

→ **He asked me**...

9. “Where had you gone when we arrived?” he asked me.

→ He asked me..

10. “Who is she?” they asked him.

→ They asked him...

EXERCISE 11

1. “Where can I find the room?” the boy asked me.

→ The boy asked me...

2. “Where did you put my books?” she asked John.

→ She asked John..

3. “Where did you hid her wallet?” the policeman asked the boy.

→ The policeman asked the boy...

4. “How do you speak these sentences in English?” she asked him.

→ She asked him..

5. “Why didn’t you come here on time?” my father asked her.

→ My father asked her...

6. “How may I help you?” he asked me.

→ He asked me..

7. “Who gave you the money?” he asked me.

→ He asked me..

8. “What’s your nationality?” he asked me.

→ He asked me..

9. “Where have you been since 9:00?” he asked me.

→ He asked me..

10. “Where are you going?” he asked her.

→ He asked her..

EXERCISE 12

1. “How did you explain the situation to the man?” she asked.

→ She asked me...

2. "How did they overcome their difficulty?" she asked them.

→ **She asked them**...

3. "Where did you spend your holiday last year?" they asked me.

→ **They asked me**...

4. "Which book do you like?" they asked her.

→ **They asked her**...

5. "Why are you sad?" we asked her.

→ **We asked her**...

6. "How does she read this text?" they asked me.

→ **They asked me**...

7. "Where is he working? I want to see him now," she said.

→ **She asked me**...

8. "Who are you speaking to?" he asked the boy.

→ **He asked the boy**...

9. "When did you see him?" my wife asked me.

→ **My wife asked me**...

10. "What would you like for lunch?" she asked me.

→ **She asked me**...

EXERCISE 13

1. "Where has he been this week?" she asked him.

→ **She asked him**...

2. "What did you say to him?" the woman asked her.

→ **The woman asked her**...

3. "How long have you been learning English?" she asked me.

→ **She asked me**...

4. "Where were you you working when I phoned you at 4:00?" he asked me.

→ **He asked me**...

5. “What will you do in the situation?” he asked me.

→ He asked me...

6. “How do you travel to this city?” they asked us.

→ They asked us...

7. “What subject do you like best?” they asked me.

→ They asked me...

8. “How do you translate the sentence into Vietnamese?” they asked me.

→ They asked me...

9. “What did you have for the dinner?” she asked him.

→ She asked him..

10. “What can I do for you, Peter?” she asked.

→ She asked Peter..

EXERCISE 14

1. “Why did you cry last week?” she asked me.

→ She asked me..

2. “What have you just done?” he asked me.

→ He asked me...

3. “How did you recognize him?” she asked me.

→ She asked me..

4. “How does she express these words?” they asked him.

→ They asked him...

5. “Where did you park your car?” they asked him.

→ They asked him...

6. “How do you like this restaurant?” she asked me.

→ She asked me..

7. “When did you paint this wall? It looks bright,” she said to me.

→ She asked me..

8. “Who broke this vase?” he asked her.

→ He asked her...

9. “Why do you study English?” she asked me.

→ She asked me..

10. "How long does it take you to write a book?" they asked me.

→ **They asked me**...

EXERCISE 15

1. "Are you new students?" they asked us.

→ **They asked us**...

2. "Do you like my school?" she asked me.

→ **She asked me**...

3. "Are you watching a film on TV?" she asked me.

→ **She asked me**...

4. "Can you sing this song?" they asked.

→ **They asked** ....

5. "Will you help me?" she asked him.

→ **She asked him**...

6. "Are you hungry?" she asked me.

→ **She asked me**...

7. "Will it be dangerous to stand here?" they asked me.

→ **They asked me**...

8. "Did they understand what you said?" she asked me.

→ **She asked me**...

9. "Does your father like drinking coffee?" she asked me.

→ **She asked me**...

10. "Does it take you much time to draw this picture?" he asked her.

→ **He asked her**...

EXERCISE 16

1. "Can I see your visa?" he asked me.

→ **He asked me**...

2. "Do your children study hard every day?" she asked me.

→ **She asked me**...

3. "Will it be easy for me to solve this problem?" I asked him.

→ I asked him...

4. "Is he a teacher?" they said to me.

→ They asked me..

5. "Do your parents stay up late at night?" she asked me.

→ She asked me..

6. "Do they agree with you on this matter?" he asked me.

→ He asked me...

7. "Have you ever been to Hue City?" I asked Mr. Trung.

→ I asked Mr. Trung...

8. "Can you give me the message?" she asked me.

→ She asked me..

9. "Are you tired?" she asked me.

→ She asked me..

10. "Did they finish doing housework?" she asked him.

→ She asked him...

EXERCISE 17

1. "Were they helped with this work?" he asked me.

→ He asked me...

2. "Have you heard from her?" they asked me.

→ They asked me..

3. "Can you lend me some money?" I asked her.

→ I asked her...

4. "Is this the best hotel you could find?" they asked me.

→ They asked me..

5. "Did they make a quarrel with each other?" she asked me.

→ She asked me..

6. "Did he promise to help you?" she asked me.

→ She asked me..

7. “Were they successful in giving up smoking?” she asked us.

→ **She asked us**……………………………………………………………

8. “Do they always depend on their parents?” she asked him.

→ **She asked him**……………………………………………………………

9. “Are you accustomed to hearing the noise?” she asked me.

→ **She asked me**……………………………………………………………

10. “Are there any books?” they asked me.

→ **They asked me**……………………………………………………………

EXERCISE 18

1. “Will your compamy open two more branches?” he asked me.

→ **He asked me**……………………………………………………………

2. “Why didn’t you open your eyes?” they asked him.

→ **They asked him**……………………………………………………………

3. “Did they accept your application of the job?” I asked her.

→ **I asked her**……………………………………………………………

4. “Can you help me carry the case?” she asked me.

→ **She asked me**……………………………………………………………

5. “Did he know what happened?” she asked me.

→ **She asked me**……………………………………………………………

6. “Did the accident happen at 6:30 P.M?” they asked me.

→ **They asked me**……………………………………………………………

7. “Will she look after your children when you go away?” he asked me.

→ **He asked me**……………………………………………………………

8. “Were these houses built in 1996?” they asked her.

→ **They asked her**……………………………………………………………

9. “Are they cooking sweet soup?” we asked her.

→ **We asked her**……………………………………………………………

10. “Have you finished your duty?” she asked me.

→ **She asked me**……………………………………………………………

EXERCISE 19

1. "Open your eyes," the doctor asked the boy.

→ **The doctor told……………………………………………………………..**

2. "Do these exercises carefully," the teacher said to the students.

→ **The teacher told the students…………………………………………...**

3. "Stand here until I come back," he said to me.

→ **He told me…………………………………………………………………..**

4. "Be careful or you will make some mistakes," they asked.

→ **They told me……………………………………………………………….**

5. "Don't leave your hats on this table," he said to us.

→ **He told us…………………………………………………………………...**

6. "Stop your work now," he said to me.

→ **He asked me………………………………………………………………...**

7. "Turn off the lights before you leave," he said to me.

→ **He told me…………………………………………………………………..**

8. "Do this exercise by yourself," he said to her.

→ **He asked her……………………………………………………………….**

9. "Keep silent," he said to the girl.

→ **He told the girl……………………………………………………………..**

10. "Close the door," they said to me.

→ **They told me……………………………………………………………….**

EXERCISE 20

1. "Don't make noise or I will punish you," he said to her.

→ **He told her………………………………………………………………….**

2. "Study harder for your exams," they said to me.

→ **They told me……………………………………………………………….**

3. "Phone me after 10:00 P.M," I said to him.

→ **He told him………………………………………………………………...**

4. “Don’t let her know my name,” he said to me.

→ **He told her**..

5. “Read this book carefully,” he said to me.

→ **He told me**..

6. “Don’t open your books while you are doing this exercise,” the teacher said.

→ **The teacher told us**..

7. “Drive carefully or you will be in a dangerous condition,” he said.

→ **He told me**..

8. “Wait for me a minute,” I said to him.

→ **I told him**..

9. “Don’t turn on the computer,” I said to him.

→ **I told him**..

10. “Clean the board immediately,” he said to me.

→ **He told me**..

*** Hãy sử dụng các động từ order, threaten, advise, remind, suggest, tell, offer, warn, promise, asked để tường thuật các câu sau.**

EXERCISE 21

1. “If you don’t give me your handbag, I will kill you,” he said to me.

→ .... **(threatened)**

2. “Show me your driver’s license,” the policeman said to me.

→ .... **(ordered)**

3. “You’d better do morning exercice,” he said to me.

→ .... **(advised)**

4. “Don’t forget to send this letter for me,” he said to me.

→ .... **(reminded)**

5. “Why don’t we listen to music to relax?” he said.

→ .... **(suggested)**

6. "Don't touch this oven. It is very dangerous," he said to me.

→ ....(warned)

7. "Close the door," I said to the boy.

→ .... (asked)

8. "I will help them solve this problem," I said to them.

→ .... (promised)

9. "You shouldn't stay in bed," the doctor said to me.

→ .... (advised)

10. "Don't park your car here," he said to me.

→ .... (ordered)

EXERCISE 22

1. "If your English is good, I will give you a chance," he said to her.

→ .... (offered)

2. "Don't stay up late at night," they said to me.

→ .... (told)

3. "If I were you, I wouldn't buy this bicycle," he said to me.

→ .... (advised)

4. "Go out," they said to the boy.

→ .... (ordered)

5. "Why don't you bring a raincoat?" he said to me.

→ .... (advised)

6. "Be careful or you will be punished," they said to him.

→ .... (warned)

7. "We should take part in the game," he said.

→ .... (suggested)

8. "Why don't you take a three – month – course?" I said to her.

→ .... (advised)

9. "Give me another new word," he said to me.

→ .... (asked)

10. "Stand up and answer my questions," the man said to her.

→ .... (ordered)

EXERCISE 23

1. "Don't make the mistake again," he said to me.

→ .... **(asked)**

2. "Could you tell me the way to the post office?" he asked me.

→ .... **(asked)**

3. "You must be there on time tomorrow," they said to her.

→ .... **(reminded)**

4. "I'll kill her if you break your word," he said to me.

→ .... **(threatened)**

5. "Don't carry the vase. It is breakable," he said to me.

→ .... **(warned)**

6. "You won't pass your exam if you don't study harder," he said.

→ .... **(advised)**

7. "Would you like a cup of tea?" he said to her.

→ .... **(offered)**

8. "You must answer my questions now," the policeman said to him.

→ .... **(ordered)**

9. "You can't help moving this chair to another way," she said.

→ .... **(ordered)**

10. "It's high time you took care of yourselves," she said to the children.

→ .... **(told)**

*** Hãy chọn câu trả lời đúng nhất:**

EXERCISE 24

1. "Why has he been here?" she said to herself.

A. She said why he had been there.

B. She wondered why he had been here.

C. She asked why he had been there.

D. She wondered why he had been there.

2. "I couldn't go there because I was very busy," he said.

A. He said that he couldn't go there because he had been busy.

B. He promised to go there because he had been busy.

C. He refused to go there because he had been busy.

D. He suggested not go there because he had been busy.

3. "You mustn't enter this room," he said to me.

A. He admitted having entered that room.

B. He warned me to enter that room.

C. He ordered me not to enter that room.

D. He ordered me to enter that room.

4. "I'm sorry. I was late," I said to Miss. Huong.

A. Miss. Huong apologized to me for being late.

B. I apologized to Miss. Huong for being late.

C. I accused Miss. Huong of being late.

D. I said to Miss. Huong I was sorry.

5. "The storm destroyed this city last night," they said.

A. They said that the storm had destroyed that city the following night.

B. They said that the storm had destroyed this city the night before.

C. They said that the storm had destroyed that city the night before.

D. They said that the storm destroyed that city the night before.

6. "I didn't steal this car," he said.

A. He said that he hadn't stolen this car.

B. He admitted having stolen that car.

C. He denied having stolen that car.

D. He was accused of having stolen that car.

7. "You shouldn't believe in what he says," she said to me.

A. She ordered me not to believe in what he said.

B. She advised me not to believe in what he says.

C. She reminded me not to believe in what he said.

D. She advised me not to believe in what he said.

8. "Will you visit me next year?" he said to her.

A. He asked her if she would visit him the following year.

B. He asked her would she visit him the following year.

C. She asked him if he would visit her the following year.

D. He asked her to visit him the following year.

9. "Where did you buy this car?" he asked me.

A. He asked me where I had bought that car.

B. He asked me where had I bought that car.

C. He asked me where I bought that car.

D. He wanted to know where I had bought this car.

10. "May I know your name?" he said to me.

A. He wanted to know my name.

B. He ordered me to tell him my name.

C. He asked me if he knows my name.

D. He asked me if he knew your name.

EXERCISE 25

1. "Will it be interesting to read this book?" she said to me.

A. She said that it would be interesting to reading that book.

B. She asked me if it would be interesting to read that book.

C. She asked me if would it be interesting to read that book.

D. She wondered if it would be interesting to read that book.

2. "They didn't receive my letter," he said to me.

A. He asked me they hadn't receivesd his letter.

B. He told me that they hadn't received my letter.

C. He told me that they hadn't received his letter.

D. He said that they didn't receive his letter.

3. "He is making a speech next week," they said.

A. They said that he was making a speech last week.

B. They said that he was making a speech the week before.

C. They said that he promised to make a speech the next week.

D. They said that he was making a speech the following week.

4. "If I were you, I would leave for Da Nang City," she said to me.

A. She said that if she were you, she would leave for Da Nang City.

B. She advised me to leave for Da Nang City.

C. She ordered me to leave for Da Nang City.

D. She would have left for Da Nang City if she were me.

5. "My book was found nowhere," he said to me.

A. He told me that my book had been found nowhere.

B. He told me that his book had been found nowhere.

C. He said that his book hadn't been found nowhere.

D. He asked me that his book had been found nowhere.

6. "Where is the bus stop, John?" they asked.

A. They told John where the bus stop was.

B. They asked John where was the bus stop.

C. John asked them where the bus stop was.

D. They asked John where the bus stop was.

7. "We wished we hadn't bought this handphone," they said to me.

A. They told me that they hadn't bought that handphone.

B. They admitted having bought that handphone.

C. They regretted having bought this handphone.

D. They regretted having bought that handphone.

8. "We haven't heard from her since we moved this city," they said.

A. They said that they haven't heard from her since they had moved that city.

B. They said that we hadn't heard from her since they had moved that city.

C. They said that they hadn't heard from her since they had moved that city.

D. They said that they hadn't heard from her since they moved that city.

9. "Look at these pictures carefully," they said to me.

A. They advised me to look at those pictures carefully.

B. They told me to look at these pictures carefully.

C. They told me to look at those pictures carefully.

D. They reminded me to look at those pictures carefully.

10. "I have been working for this company since 1990," he said.

A. He said that I had been working for this company since 1990.

B. He said that he had been working for this company since 1990.

C. He told me that he has been working for that company since 1990.

D. He had been working for that company since 1990.

EXERCISE 26

1. "We couldn't drive faster because of the heavy rain," he said to me.

A. He told me that the heavy rain prevented them from driving faster.

B. He told me that they hadn't driven faster because of the heavy rain.

C. He told me that we could have driven faster if it hadn't rained.

D. He told me that the heavy rain accused them of driving faster.

2. "This time next year, they will be traveling to Thailand," he said.

A. He said that this time next year, they would be traveling to Thailand.

B. He said that time next year, they would be traveling to Thailand.

C. He said that time the year before, they would be traveling to Thailand.

D. He said that time the year after, they would be traveling to Thailand.

3. "If we have more free time, we will go shopping," they said.

A. They said that if they had more free time, they would go shopping.

B. They said that if they have more free time, they will go shopping.

C. They said that if they had had more free time, they would have gone shopping.

D. They said that we would go shopping if we had more free time.

4. “I could have answered your question if I had read this book,” he said.

A. He said he could have answered my question if he had read that book.

B. He said I could have answered my question if I had read that book.

C. He said he could have answered my question if he had read this book.

D. He said he could have answered your question if he had read that book.

5. “Has he changed his mind?” she asked me.

A. She asked me if he had changed his mind.

B. She asked me if I had changed my mind.

C. She asked me if had he changed his mind.

D. She asked me if he had changed my mind.

6. “When did you have your car repaired?” she asked me.

A. She asked me when I had my car repaired.

B. She wanted to know if I had my car repaired.

C. She wanted to know when I had had my car repaired.

D. She asked me when had I have my car repaired.

7. “The flight to Japan was cancelled last night,” they said.

A. They said that the flight to Japan had been cancelled last night.

B. They announced that the flight to Japan had been cancelled the night after.

C. They said that the flight to Japan had cancelled the night before.

D. They said that the flight to Japan had been cancelled the night before.

8. “The date of the meeting will have to be changed again,” they said.

A. They said that the date of the meeting would have to be changed again.

B. They said that the date of the meeting had to be changed again.

C. They said that the date of the meeting had to change again.

D. They said that the date of the meeting would have to changed again.

9. “If I were you, I would answer this question,” she said to me.

A. She said if she were me, she would answer that question.

B. She said if she were me, she would have answered that question.

C. She advises me to answer that question.

D. She said she could have answered that question.

10. "Don't talk so much," she said to me.

A. She told me not to talk so much.

B. She forced me to talked so much.

C. She threatened me not to talk so much.

D. She threatened not to talk so much.

*** Học sinh tự luyện tập**

Hãy chuyển các câu sau sang dạng câu gián tiếp.

1. "Don't discuss the matter again," they said.

→ ....

2. "I find it difficult for me to drive a car," she said.

→ ....

3. "She has been telling me three stories," they said.

→ ....

4. "Where have you been for 3 months?" she said to me.

→ ....

5. "I hate smoking," he said.

→ ....

6. "She succeeded in finding the new method," they said.

→ ....

7. "How do you think about her reaction?" they said to me.

→ ....

8. "Tell me what you think," she said to me.

→ ....

9. "I booked my tickets in advance," he said.

→ ....

10. "Peter ate four cakes, so he felt sick," she said.

→ ……………………………………………………………………………

11. "Does she like coffee?" they said.

→ ……………………………………………………………………………

12. "Did they stay at home yesterday evening?" she said to me.

→ ……………………………………………………………………………

13. "What did you do last night?" they said to her.

→ ……………………………………………………………………………

14. "The accident happened while we were driving," they said.

→ ……………………………………………………………………………

15. "Is there any water in the bottle?" she asked them.

→ ……………………………………………………………………………

16. "Don't tell anyone about this until next month," she said to me.

→ ……………………………………………………………………………

17. "How long will the trip last?" she asked me.

→ ……………………………………………………………………………

18. "He lent his book to this girl," they said.

→ ……………………………………………………………………………

19. "Have you seen this film?" she asked them.

→ ……………………………………………………………………………

20. "There will be three interviewees in this room before 8:00 A.M." she said.

→ ……………………………………………………………………………

21. "My father is speaking to his friends now," Mary said.

→ ……………………………………………………………………………

22. "Did you have any trouble with your homework last week," she asked me.

→ ……………………………………………………………………………

23. "They spent much time on their English assignments," she said.

→ ....

24. "I haven't received any confirm from the hotel," she said.

→ ....

25. "Have you ever been to Hue City?" I asked Mr. Hung.

→ ....

26. "They broke the glass while they were moving the picture," she said.

→ ....

27. "I would like to have dinner at the restaurant," they said.

→ ....

28. "The film was so boring that we went home early," they said.

→ ....

29. "We walked as fast as we could," they said.

→ ....

30. "We have just finished writing this book," they said.

→ ....

ANSWER KEY

EXERCISE 1

1. He said that he didn't like hot weather.

2. She said that she had been working there for five years.

3. They said that they didn't want to discuss the matter again.

4. He said that he couldn't swim.

5. They liked listening to music at night.

6. He said that she drank milk every morning.

7. He said that they had worked hard the day before.

8. He said that they hadn't studied hard enough, so they had failed the exam again.

9. They said that she had bought that dictionary the week before.

10. She said that Mai had been there the day before.

EXERCISE 2

1. Peter said that they couldn't understand those words.

2. She said that she had done the thing without any difficulty.

3. He said that my English would improve very quickly.

4. He said that the secretary hadn't finished typing the letter yet.

5. They said that they weren't teachers.

6. He said that he would visit me the following day.

7. She said that she had read that story several times.

8. He said that it took him two hours to read that minute.

9. He said that they had cancelled the match the day before.

10. She said that they were reading a book then.

EXERCISE 3

1. Mary said that she had been to Paris.

2. She said that she jogged around the lake in the morning.

3. They said that they were watching TV that night.

4. They said that they liked drinking coffee at night.

5. She said that he had given up smoking the previous year.

6. He said that he had had his father repaired that car.

7. He said that she would finish her homework the following week.

8. They said that they had been walking when they had seen the terrible accident.

9. He said that he had been studying for five years.

10. He said that he had met her before he had spoken to me.

EXERCISE 4

1. She said that if she had had money, she would have lent me.

2. He said that the sun goes around the earth.

3. He said that she had been there since I had left for Thailand.
4. He said that he had to leave the party before 9:00 P.M.
5. He said that I had to present the topic naturally.
6. They said that he had made a wonderful speech the week before.
7. He said that they had built her house since the previous year.
8. They said that she could speak English.
9. She said that they had behaved badly the night before.
10. The teacher said she had been absent from school because of her illness.

EXERCISE 5

1. He said that they hadn't listened to the music the night before.
2. She said that he didn't want to eat fish.
3. They said that they had avoided meeting him three days before.
4. He said that he was helping his father paint that wall.
5. They said that by the time he had arrived, they had left the room.
6. He said they were making much noise.
7. She said he couldn't take up that game.
8. They said the sun rises in the east.
9. She said that they hadn't succeeded in persuading him to accept that job.
10. He said that she was the most intelligent woman he had ever met.

EXERCISE 6

1. She told me that they were from England.
2. They told me they couldn't play as well as they had done.
3. They told her they couldn't help her with that work.
4. She told them he had devoted his life to education.
5. He told me the flight to Canada had been cancelled the previous morning.
6. She told us they were having lunch with Mr. Minh at the restaurant.
7. She told me they had pointed out the fire before the firemen had arrived.

8. They told her he had died of heart disease.

9. They told me they had caused the terrible accident because they had driven carelessly.

10. She told me she had got lost.

EXERCISE 7

1. He told me they had been working in Viet Nam since 2006.

2. They told her they had enjoyed themselves so much the night before.

3. He told her he had to meet his president that morning.

4. I told him we hadn't been there the previous year.

5. He told me that girl had answered his questions very well.

6. She told him they had made a phone call abroad the day before.

7. She told us they had visited her grandmother some years before.

8. She told me they had just made up the joke.

9. She told him they had opened that shop in October.

10. They told me they had given him that information that afternoon.

EXERCISE 8

1. She told me that I had to report the accident to the policeman.

2. He told her that he would be with her wherever she went.

3. They told him that she had sung very well the night before.

4. They told me that she had cut herself two days before.

5. She told me that they had drunk a cup of tea and had said nothing.

6. They told the policeman that the two men had run as fast as possible in order not to be recognized.

7. She told me that they had seen two accidents while they had been walking to the zoo.

8. We told the man that they would be there the following day.

9. He told us that she had been sent to the hospital the week before.

10. She told me that she wouldn't answer his questions.

EXERCISE 9

1. She told me that they had closed the front door when it had rained.
2. He told us that she hadn't finished typing that book yet.
3. He told me that it might rain.
4. He told her that she should have read that book the day before.
5. He told me that if he had had more time, he would have visited the palace.
6. He told me that he had visited many interests of places in the city recently.
7. He told me that she hadn't bought fish for lunch.
8. He told me that she didn't get on well with the manager.
9. I told him that she had corrected those sentences for me.
10. He told me that he didn't know why she was sad.

EXERCISE 10

1. She asked me where I was from.
2. She asked John how he liked her new dress.
3. She asked me why I hadn't bought that dictionary and said it was very useful for me.
4. He asked me where my father had been the night before.
5. He asked her what she had been doing at 4:00 the evening before.
6. They asked her when she had arrived in New York City.
7. She asked me what she wanted.
8. He asked me when I had been born.
9. He asked me where I had gone when they had arrived.
10. They asked him who she was.

EXERCISE 11

1. The boy asked me where he could find the room.
2. She asked John where he had put her books.

3. The policeman asked the boy where he had hidden her wallet.

4. She asked him how he spoke those sentences in English.

5. My father asked her why she hadn't come there on time.

6. He asked me how I might help you.

7. He asked me who had given me the money.

8. He asked me what my nationality was.

9. He asked me where I had been since 9:00.

10. He asked her where she was going.

EXERCISE 12

1. She asked me how I had explained the situation to the man.

2. She asked them how they had overcome their difficulty.

3. They asked me where I had spent my holiday the previous year.

4. They asked her which book she liked.

5. We asked her why she was sad.

6. They asked me how she read that text.

7. She asked me where he was working and said she wanted to see him then.

8. He asked the boy who he was speaking to.

9. My wife asked me when I had seen him.

10. She asked me what I liked for lunch.

EXERCISE 13

1. She asked him where he had been that morning.

2. The woman asked her what she had said to him.

3. She asked me how long I had been learning English.

4. He asked me where I had been working when he had phoned me at 4:00.

5. He asked me what I would do in the situation.

6. They asked us how we travelled to that city.

7. They asked me what subject I liked best.

8. They asked me how I translated the sentence into Vietnamese.

9. She asked him what he had had for the dinner.

10. She asked Peter what she could do for him.

EXERCISE 14

1. She asked me why I had cried the week before.

2. He asked me what I had just done.

3. She asked me how I had recognized him.

4. They asked him how she expressed those words.

5. They asked him where he had parked his car.

6. She asked me how I liked that restaurant.

7. She asked me when I had painted that wall and said it looked bright.

8. He asked her who had broken that vase.

9. She asked me why I studied English.

10. They asked me how long it took me to write a book.

EXERCISE 15

1. They asked us if we were new students.

2. She asked me if I liked her school.

3. She asked me if I was watching a film on TV.

4. They asked me if I could sing that song.

5. She asked him if he would help her.

6. She asked me whether they were hungry.

7. They asked me if it would be dangerous to stand there.

8. She asked me if they had understood what I had said.

9. She asked me if my father liked drinking coffee.

10. He asked her if it took her much time to draw that picture.

EXERCISE 16

1. He asked me if he could see my visa.

2. She asked me if my children studied hard every day.

3. I asked him if it would be easy for me to solve that problem.
4. They asked me if he was a teacher.
5. She asked me if my parents stayed up late at night.
6. He asked me whether they agreed with me on that matter.
7. I asked Mr. Trung if he had ever been to Hue City.
8. She asked me if I could give her the message.
9. She asked me if I was tired.
10. She asked him if they had finished doing housework.

EXERCISE 17

1. He asked me if they had been helped with that work.
2. They asked me if I had heard from her.
3. I asked her if she could lend me some money.
4. They asked me if that was the best hotel I could find.
5. She asked me if they had made a quarrel with each other.
6. She asked me if he had promise to help her.
7. She asked us if they had been successful in giving up smoking.
8. She asked me if they always depended on their parents.
9. She asked me if I was accustomed to hearing the noise.
10. They asked me if there were some books.

EXERCISE 18

1. He asked me if my company would open two more branches.
2. They asked him why he hadn't opened his eyes.
3. I asked her if they had accepted her application of the job.
4. She asked me if I could help her carry the case.
5. She asked me if he had known what had happened.
6. They asked me if the accident had happened at 6:30 P.M.
7. He asked me if she would look after my children when I went away.
8. They asked her if those houses had been built in 1996.

9. We asked her if they were cooking sweet soup.

10. She asked me if I had finished my duty.

EXERCISE 19

1. They doctor told the boy to open his eyes.

2. The teacher told the students to do those exercises carefully.

3. He told me to stand there until he came back.

4. They told me to be careful or I would make some mistakes.

5. He told us not to leave our hats on that table.

6. He asked me to stop my work then.

7. He told me to turn off the lights before I left.

8. He asked her to do that exercise by herself.

9. He told the girl to keep silent.

10. They told me to close the door.

EXERCISE 20

1. He told her not to make noise or he would punish her.

2. They told me to study harder for my exams.

3. I told him to phone me after 10:00 P.M.

4. He told her not to let her know his name.

5. He told me to read that book carefully.

6. The teacher told us not to open our books while we were doing that exercise.

7. He told me to drive carefully or I would be in a dangerous condition.

8. I told him to wait for me a minute.

9. I told him not to turn on the computer.

10. He told me to clean the board immediately.

EXERCISE 21

1. He threatened to kill me if I didn't give him my handbag.

2. The policeman ordered me to show him my driver's license.

3. He advised me to do morning exercise.

4. He reminded me not to forget to send that letter for him.

5. He suggested listening to music to relax.

6. He warned me not to touch that oven because it was very dangerous.

7. I asked the boy to close the door.

8. I promised to help them solve that problem.

9. The doctor advised me not to stay in bed.

10. He ordered me not to park my car there.

EXERCISE 22

1. He offered to give her a chance if her English was good.

2. They told me not to stay up late at night.

3. He advised me not to buy that bicycle.

4. They ordered the boy to go out.

5. He advised me to bring a raincoat.

6. They warned him to be careful or he would be punished.

7. He suggested taking part in the game.

8. I advised her to take a three – month – course.

9. He asked me to give him another new word.

10. The man ordered her to stand up and to answer his questions.

EXERCISE 23

1. He asked me not to make the mistake again.

2. He asked me to tell him the way to the post office.

3. They reminded her to be there on time the following day.

4. He threatened to kill her if I broke my word.

5. He warned me not to carry the vase because it was breakable.

6. He advised me to study harder for my exam.

7. He offered her a cup of tea.

8. The policeman ordered him to answer his questions then.

9. She ordered me to move that chair to another way.

10. She told the children to take care of themselves.

EXERCISE 24

1D 2A 3C 4B 5C 6C 7D 8A 9A 10A

EXERCISE 25

1B 2C 3D 4B 5B 6D 7D 8C 9C 10B

EXERCISE 26

1A 2D 3A 4A 5A 6C 7D 8A 9A 10A

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 4: PASSIVE VOICE (CÂU BỊ ĐỘNG)

✻ Hình thức của một câu bị động (passive) được chuyển thể từ câu chủ động (active):

Active (Chủ động)	S + V + O
Passive (Bị động)	S + Be V -3/ed (by + O)

Từ cấu trúc trên ta có thể thấy rằng:

+ Chủ ngữ trong câu chủ động sẽ làm tân ngữ trong câu bị động.

+ Tân ngữ trong câu chủ động sẽ làm chủ ngữ trong câu bị động.

+ Động từ thường trong câu chủ động luôn luôn ở trạng thái quá khứ phân từ trong câu bị động.

+ Trong câu bị động thì động từ "to be" luôn được sử dụng, tùy thuộc câu bị động đang ở thì nào, chúng ta sử dụng động từ "to be" theo dạng đúng của nó.

Ex: He teaches me English: Anh ta dạy tôi Tiếng Anh.

I am taught English by him: Tôi được dạy Tiếng Anh bởi anh ta.

✻ **Dạng bị động của các thì:**

a. Thì hiện tại đơn: ***S + be (is/am/are) + V-3/ed + ...***

Ex: He likes chicken.

Chicken is liked by him.

b. Thì hiện tại tiếp diễn: ***S + be (is/am/are) + being + V-3/ed + ...***

Ex: He is reading a book.

A book is being read by him.

c. Thì hiện tại hoàn thành: ***S + have/has + been + V-3/ed + ...***

Ex: They have studied French for two months.

French has been studied by them for two months.

d. Thì quá khứ đơn: ***S + was/were + V-3/ed + ...***

Ex: The storm destroyed the city last night.

The city was destroyed by the storm last night.

e. Thì quá khứ tiếp diễn: ***S + was/were + being + V-3/ed + ...***

Ex: They were listening to music.

Music was being listened to by them.

f. Thì quá khứ hoàn thành: ***S + had + been + V-3/ed + ...***

Ex: They had done the exercises.

The exercises had been done by them.

g. Thì tương lai đơn: ***S + will/shall + be + V-3/ed + ...***

Ex: They will cut the grass tomorrow.

The grass will be cut tomorrow.

h. Thì tương lai tiếp diễn: ***S + will/shall + be + being + V-3/ed + ...***

Ex: She will be helping you when you come here tomorrow.

You will be being helped by her when you come here tomorrow.

i. Thì tương lai hoàn thành: ***S + will/shall + have been + V-3/ed + ...***

Ex: They will have finished the course by the end of this month.

The course will have been finished by the end of this month.

✱ Dạng bị động của một số mẫu câu:

+ Chủ động (active): ***S + should/could + have + V-3/ed + O***

Bị động (passive): ***S + should/could + have + been + V-3/ed***

Ex: You should have bought this book.

This book should have been bought.

+ Dùng "It" làm chủ ngữ (mệnh đề làm tân ngữ vẫn được giữ nguyên)

Ex: They said that he is kind to you.

It is said that he is kind to you.

**** Dùng cấu trúc bị động với động từ nguyên mẫu***

- Nếu hành động trong mệnh đề làm tân ngữ xảy ra trước hành động của mệnh đề chính, chúng ta dùng ***perfect infinitive (to have+ V-3/ed)***.

Ex: They said that he had killed the woman.

He was said to have killed the woman.

- Nếu hành động trong mệnh đề làm tân ngữ xảy ra sau hành động trong mệnh đề chính, chúng ta sử dụng ***simple infinitive (to+V-bare)***.

Ex: They expect that you will come.

You are expected to come.

- Nếu hành động trong mệnh đề làm tân ngữ xảy ra đồng thời với hành động trong mệnh đề chính, ta dùng ***present infinitive (to be +V-ing)***.

Ex: They said that he was doing homework.

He was said to be doing homework.

+ Active (chủ động): ***S + V* + O + V-ing***

Passive (bị động): ***S (O) + to be (is/am/are/was/were) + V*-3/ed + V-ing***

Ex: He kept her waiting.

She was kept waiting.

+ Tân ngữ của hiện tại phân từ chỉ về cùng một đối tượng với chủ ngữ của câu.

Active: ***S* + V* + O + V-ing + O* + ...***

Passive: ***S (O*) + V* + being + V (-ing)-3/ed + ...***

Ex: I remember my mother teaching me English.

I remember being taught English by my mother.

+ Active (chủ động): ***S + V* + O* + V-to infinitive + ...***

Passive (bị động): ***S(O*) + to be (is/am/are/was/were) +V*-3/ed+ V-to-inf***

Ex: He told me to do exercise.

I was told to do this exercise.

+ Active (chủ động): ***S* + V + O + V-to-inf + O* + ...***

Passive (bị động): ***S (O*) + V + to be + V (to-inf) 3/ed + ...***

Ex: I want you to help me this work.

I want to be helped this work.

+ Active (chủ động): ***S + V + O1 + giới từ + O2***

Passive (bị động):***S(O1) + to be (is/am/are/was/were) + V-3/ed + giới từ +O2***

Ex: They announced their story to the class.

Their story was announced to the class.

✳ Một số dạng bị động đặc biệt

+ Câu mệnh lệnh (command)

Ex: - Close the door.

Let the door be closed.

- Don't close the door.

Let not the door be closed.

+ Let (Để cho)

- We let her go out.

She was let go out.

- Don't let people laugh at you.

Don't let yourself be laughed at.

Bài tập
Hãy chuyển các câu sau sang dạng câu bị động

EXERCISE 1

1. They drink coffee every morning.

→ ....

2. The man delivers letters every day.

→ ....

3. We study English instead of Japanese.

→ ....

4. He reads two books a week.

→ ....

5. We need much more water to produce the products.

→ ....

6. He drives his car to the town on Sunday.

→ ....

7. They build hundreds of beautiful buildings every year.

→ ....

8. He usually does his housework after school.

→ ....

9. They feed the lions at 5:00 P.M.

→ ....

10. They always finish their homework before going to bed.

→ ....

11. Do you like pop music?

→ ....

12. They wear the uniform when they go to school.

→ ....

13. She looks after the children very carefully.

→ ....

14. We eat vegetables every day.

→ ....

15. We don't accept your application.

→ ....

16. Air pollution causes a lot of serious diseases.

→ ....

17. They help her with her homework every day.

→ ....

18. We use the second hand computer carefully.

→ ....

19. They don't say anything when they meet me.

→ ....

20. They design three houses each year.

→ ....

21. They usually help the tourists how to enter the cave.

→ ……………………………………………………………………………………

22. The grow roses in the garden.

→ ……………………………………………………………………………………

23. They often test weapon in the area.

→ ……………………………………………………………………………………

24. She never forgets to turn off the light before going out.

→ ……………………………………………………………………………………

25. They divide the book into three chapters.

→ ……………………………………………………………………………………

26. They open the shop at 6:00 A.M every day.

→ ……………………………………………………………………………………

27. What do they do to help the poor?

→ ……………………………………………………………………………………

28. What do you call the new hotel?

→ ……………………………………………………………………………………

29. They visit the old church every two years.

→ ……………………………………………………………………………………

30. She spends a lot of money on shopping.

→ ……………………………………………………………………………………

31. She makes us laugh a lot by making up jokes.

→ ……………………………………………………………………………………

32. We use milk to make cheese.

→ ……………………………………………………………………………………

33. Why don't you close your book?

→ ……………………………………………………………………………………

34. She reads two pages every morning.

→ ……………………………………………………………………………………

35. She calls me at night.

→ ....

36. Sad stories make me cry.

→ ....

37. He smokes twenty cigarettes a day.

→ ....

38. We usually watch films on TV after dinner.

→ ....

39. If you finish typing the letter before lunch time, I won't punish you.

→ ....

40. She takes a taxi to the office every morning.

→ ....

41. They protect the forests by planting a lot of trees.

→ ....

42. No one helps me do the housework.

→ ....

43. They spend two hours solving the problem.

→ ....

44. My father takes me to the zoo every night.

→ ....

45. Unless you use this bicycle carefully, I won't lend you it any more.

→ ....

46. They don't play football in the park.

→ ....

47. Peter's father sends Mary to the school.

→ ....

48. My wife always prepares dinner before I come back home from office.

→ ....

49. She encourages me to overcome difficulties.

→ ....

50. They focus on the difficult exercises.

→ ....

EXERCISE 2

1. They didn't take me to the party last night.

→ ....

2. My father introduced me to the director.

→ ....

3. How many books did you buy yesterday evening?

→ ....

4. The teachers made their students happy.

→ ....

5. She invited a lot of old friends to her wedding party.

→ ....

6. Why didn't you visit your parents?

→ ....

7. When I was ten years old, they didn't allow me to read this book.

→ ....

8. We didn't lend the car to the man.

→ ....

9. They had to arrange the appointment again.

→ ....

10. The earthquake destroyed this city last month.

→ ....

11. When did you recognize them?

→ ....

12. The police stopped our car when we went home.

→ ....

13. They said nothing before they turn off the computer.

→ ....

14. How did you translate the sentences into Vietnamese?

→ ....

15. They couldn't find the key anywhere.

→ ....

16. What did you say to the man?

→ ....

17. They couldn't read the book without glasses.

→ ....

18. I used to teach them English.

→ ....

19. She didn't use the solution to the problem.

→ ....

20. The president made an interesting speech last week.

→ ....

21. The exercise was too difficult for the boy to do.

→ ....

22. They picked me up at the airport.

→ ....

23. They kept me waiting for them.

→ ....

24. We received your letter this morning.

→ ....

25. My father asked me to tell the truth.

→ ....

26. They sold the old car when I was 20 years old.

→ ....

27. They showed me the way to Da Nang Airport.

→ ....

28. I wish you met me at the rail station.

→ ....

29. Someone broke into the house last night.

→ ....

30. When did the men put out the fire?

→ ....

31. How did you spend the amount of money?

→ ....

32. If they knew your new address, they would visit you.

→ ....

33. They ordered the boy to stand up immediately.

→ ....

34. Didn't she tell you to be here by five o'clock?

→ ....

35. Who wrote this letter?

→ ....

36. Did they build this five – star – hotel in 2007?

→ ....

37. In order to buy this house, we had to save much money in five years.

→ ....

38. They taught me how to pronounce the word.

→ ....

39. No one expected that they would be here.

→ ....

40. Her husband left her a lot of money before he died

→ ....

41. They booked me tickets in advance.

→ ....

42. I and Mr. Cuong didn't know what happened.

→ ....

43. Did your parents teach you how to behave in public?

→ ....

44. Why did they change the date of the meeting?

→ ....

45. It was too dark for us to see the picture.

→ ....

46. They carried the luggage.

→ ....

47. How did she break the vases?

→ ....

48. How many books did you read in 2008?

→ ....

49. They sang the song beautifully last night.

→ ....

50. We couldn't see the top of the hill from the hotel.

→ ....

EXERCISE 3

1. I haven't seen them since I moved to the city.

→ ....

2. How long have you lived in this house?

→ ....

3. They have repaired the restaurant recently.

→ ....

4. We have just finished our duty.

→ ....

5. Have you ever read such an interesting book?

→ ....

6. I have never heard about the news.

→ ....

7. The men have made much progress since January.

→ ....

8. Now that they have built this road, it will take you only five minutes to get there.

→ ....

9. No one has found the answer since you entered the room.

→ ....

10. Have they studied English since last year?

→ ....

11. The students have done a research on animal.

→ ....

12. This is the first time I have ever encountered a difficult situation.

→ ....

13. I haven't attended the important meeting since 9:00 A.M.

→ ....

14. How long have they tested the weapon?

→ ....

15. We have visited Ha Noi many times since we lived in the village.

→ ....

16. They have spoken English more fluently since you appeared.

→ ....

17. They have sold that house for 3 years.

→ ....

18. How long have you prepared the meal?

→ ....

19. I have worked on my English assignment since Monday.

→ ....

20. The car has used much fuel recently.

→ ....

21. We haven't received the confirm from the hotel so far.

→ ....

22. We have corrected the sentences for 3 days.

→ ....

23. Have you ever made a speech in public?

→ ....

24. They have never seen the Statue of Liberty.

→ ....

25. We have tried to give up smoking several times.

→ ....

26. Mr. Fred has been here since you painted the wall.

→ ....

27. Nobody has found the missing file already.

→ ....

28. They have divided the country into 3 parts since 1909.

→ ....

29. They have built the museum for 5 years. They will finish building it next year.

→ ....

30. We haven't seen the television programs since lunchtime.

→ ....

31. They have made a decision.

→ ....

32. They haven't finished their exercise since they went to school.

→ ....

33. Have you ever cut the grass?

→ ....

34. The engineer has designed the tower since January.

→ ....

35. I haven't heard from my aunt so far.

→ ....

36. They have taken me to the palace many times.

→ ....

37. They have written the letter for 20 minutes.

→ ....

38. My uncles have brought up me for for twenty years.

→ ....

39. They have published many English books since 2008.

→ ....

40. I have ever met your president several times.

→ ....

EXERCISE 4

1. They didn't complain to the chairman about the matter.
   → The matter ....
2. They have read 20 pages so far.
   → Twenty pages...
3. You had better save your money in the bank.
   → Your money ....
4. Can you tell me the way to the post office?
   → Can I..
5. Turn off all light before you leave the room.
   → All lights...
6. She was cleaning the floor when I came in
   → The floor...

7. She is listening to music now.

→ Music……………………………………………………………………

8. We were reading the letter while she was cooking.

→ The letter………………………………………………………………...

9. What would you say if you were in my situation?

→ What……………………………………………………………………...

10. She didn't do anything when she lived in the city.

→ Nothing ……………………………………………………………………

11. We have met her at the airport.

→ She………………………………………………………………………...

12. This beautiful city attracts many visitors.

→ Many visitors………………………………………………………………...

13. She didn't allow us to go out at night.

→We …………………………………………………………………………...

14. They couldn't repair the roof yesterday.

→ The roof…………………………………………………………………...

15. How many books did they borrow?

→ How many ……………………………………………………………...?

16. Are you interested in the book I gave you yesterday?

→ Are you…………………………………………………………………...?

17. Hundreds of people destroyed the building last week.

→ The building ……………………………………………………………

18. They told the student not to make noise during the time.

→ The student ……………………………………………………………...

19. We were carrying the vase when they prepared to paint it.

→ The vase……………………………………………………………………

20. Don't leave him at home or he will go out with his friends.

→ He …………………………………………………………………………

21. They have done nothing since they moved to the village.

→ Nothing ……………………………………………………………………

22. Nobody has ever known them to be unhappy.

→ They ....

23. You mustn't press the button while I am driving.

→ The button ....

24. When did they do this work?

→ When ....

25. Whatever I do, they don't believe in me.

→ Whatever ....

26. They introduced me to him, and we made friends together.

→ I ....

27. When we talked about the accident, we didn't mention them.

→ When the ....

28. They divided us into three groups when we took part in the game.

→ We..

29. They didn't point out his mistakes to me.

→ His mistakes..

30. They doubt whether she can win the race.

→ They ....

31. You can't use this car because they will need it this morning.

→ This car ....

32. I applied for the job, but he refused.

→ My..

33. Did he give you the book he bought yesterday?

→ Were ....

34. Who did type this letter?

→ By ....

35. I remember that she gave me some candies.

→ I remember ....

36. What do you call the new restaurant?

→ What ....

37. They broke into the house last night.

→ The house ……………………………………………………………………

38. You should have told us how many people you invited.

→ We ……………………………………………………………………………

39. They awarded him the golden medal.

→ He ……………………………………………………………………………

40. Has she told you how to operate the machine?

→ Have …………………………………………………………………………

41. How many pages are you going to read this evening?

→ How …………………………………………………………………………

42. Who will run this company when I go away?

→ By ……………………………………………………………………………

43. Don't let them see you.

→ Don't …………………………………………………………………………

44. I had my father mend the car.

→ I ………………………………………………………………………………

45. They used to make me look after her.

→ I………………………………………………………………………………

46. She likes us to help her.

→She ……………………………………………………………………………

47. They had finished their homework before they watched the football match.

→ Their homework……………………………………………………………

48. I she had redecorated the room, it would have been nicer.

→ If the room……………………………………………………………………

49. We have studied English for 15 years.

→ English ………………………………………………………………………

50. We haven't said anything since she saw you.

→ Nothing ………………………………………………………………………

EXERCISE 5

1. She has already prepared the dinner.

→ The dinner...

2. She admitted stealing my car last week.

→ My car...

3. She had met the doctor before you phoned her.

→ The doctor...

4. They will have to cancel the flight because of the bad weather.

→ The flight..

5. They avoided meeting me because they didn't like me.

→ I ....

6. "Go out!" he said to me.

→ I...

7. There were nine students in the hall. The teacher told them to keep silent during the time.

→ Nine students..

8. People say that he is very rich.

→ He ....

9. This is the first time they have told us about this.

→ This ....

10. We were watching TV at 4 pm yesterday evening.

→ T.V ....

11. Don't put the book on the table.

→ The book ....

12. I used to take him to the city when he was a little boy.

→ He ....

13. We know that he does this work.

→ He ....

14. They told him to open the door.

→ He ....

15. Nobody did this work last week.

→ This work ……………………………………………………………………

16. Tom and Mary are digging holes in the garden.

→ Holes…………………………………………………………………………

17. Before we used this computer, we had asked you.

→ Before ………………………………………………………………………

18. You must leave the dog outside the house.

→ The dog………………………………………………………………………

19. When did you last see him?

→ When…………………………………………………………………………

20. I hate people laughing at me.

→ I………………………………………………………………………………

21. They will tell you which bus to catch.

→ You …………………………………………………………………………

22. I don't enjoy them making me do the work.

→ I don't………………………………………………………………………

23. Did they see you open the window?

→ Were…………………………………………………………………………

24. Aren't you afraid they will kill you if you don't give them the money?

→ Aren't you …………………………………………………………………

25. You should take care of your health and not be unaware of it.

→ Your health…………………………………………………………………

26. The tea was so hot that no one would drink it.

→ The tea ………………………………………………………………………

27. They informed me that they had seen my mother at the cinema.

→ I ………………………………………………………………………………

28. Everybody believes that he killed the woman.

→ It………………………………………………………………………………

29. The trouble started when they told me to reuse the machine.

→ The trouble …………………………………………………………………

30. Everybody thought that Mai was the most intelligent student.

→ It ....

31. They expected me to meet them at the airport.

→ They expected ....

32. They want me to buy them a new TV set.

→ They want ....

33. I don't like eating the fish, but my father forces me to eat it everyday.

→ I..

34. She offered to give me a chance to be a teacher at the school.

→ I..

35. They don't mind lending you the car.

→ They don't ....

36. At the end of this month, I will have finished the course.

→ At the end ....

37. They hoped to see you yesterday.

→ They ....

38. She doesn't mind giving you some advices.

→ She..

39. I won't have my own Tet holidays this year.

→ My own ....

40. You had to pick me up at the rail station.

→ I...

41. Why are you going to have the meal?

→ Why...

42. It is very hot. We can't do anything until it gets cool.

→ It is...

43. It's no use asking them to stay at home. They can't help joining the party.

→ It's ....

44. They would never miss visiting you.

→ You..

45. If you dial the numbers, they will come to help you.

→ If you…...

46. If you want to be good at English, you must practice speaking it everyday.

→ If you ....

47. Your house will look very beautiful once you have finished redecorating.

→ Your house...

48. If you want to see him, please tell me.

→ If you ....

49. What would you say if I gave you the present?

→ What ....

50. The noise wakes me up.

→ I ....

EXERCISE 6

1. We suggested taking a short rest.

→ We suggested...

2. What language do people speak in the country?

→ What language ....

3. They will see you off at the Church.

→ You..

4. People say that they built this house last month.

→ They..

5. Have you got my letter yet?

→ Has..

6. The light went out while we were having dinner.

→ The light..

7. How much money do you give me?

→ How...

8. We asked her to let us see him off.

→ She..

9. Don't make the mistake again.

→ The mistakes..

10. I found the exercise difficult.

→ The exercise ....

11. You had better not buy the house.

→ The house ....

12. He promised to help me, and he kept his promise.

→ I...

13. Where did you put your keys?

→ Where..

14. We are preparing everything for my sister's wedding.

→ Everything ....

15. When I was 10 years old, my father didn't allow me to go fishing with my friends.

→ When ....

16. People said he had won the first prize.

→ He ....

17. Can you translate the text from English into Vietnamese?

→ Can ....

18. The house looks very old because we haven't painted it for 2 years.

→ The house ....

19. My uncle made a speech on Chemistry last week.

→ A speech ....

20. We spent 3 days travelling around the world.

→ Travelling ....

21. Why did you laugh at me?

→ Why ....

22. We will be driving a car at 8 a.m tomorrow morning.

→ A car ....

23. How do you make the sentences?

→ How...

24. They saw you climbing over the window.

→ You ……………………………………………………………………………

25. I advised her to put the money under the bed.

→ She ……………………………………………………………………………

26. How can they take her to the zoo?

→ How ……………………………………………………………………………

27. She needn't close the door.

→ The door ………………………………………………………………………

28. They are going to build a house opposite my school.

→ A house ………………………………………………………………………

29. They promised to take me to the countryside.

→ I……………………………………………………………………………

30. I believed she had passed the examination.

→ She ……………………………………………………………………………

31. We are sure that they will prepare everything before we come.

→ We……………………………………………………………………………

32. She turned off the light and closed the door.

→ The light ………………………………………………………………………

33. He never sends letters to his close friends.

→ Letters …………………………………………………………………………

34. The computer can solve the problem faster than you.

→ The problem ……………………………………………………………………

35. You should examine the test carefully.

→ The test …………………………………………………………………………

36. She asked me if I could help her solve the problem.

→ I……………………………………………………………………………

37. You have to apologise to her for having stolen her watch.

→ She……………………………………………………………………………

38. They ought to leave the room early or they will miss the train.

→ They ……………………………………………………………………………

39. She used to make me cry.

→ I...

40. Why didn't you call her?

→ Why..

41. They didn't like the book, so they gave it back to me.

→ The book ....

42. My mother is going to sew the shirt.

→ The shirt ....

43. You are having lots of money. How do you spend it?

→ You ....

44. Fortunately, they showed me the way to the bus stop.

→ Fortunately,...

45. I like you to take some photographs at the place.

→ I like...

46. They didn't tell her the truth about the problem.

→ She..

47. If you had bought me a new car, I would have been happy.

→ If I..

48. If it rains, we can't play football.

→ If I..

49. She usually feeds her dog at 7 am every morning.

→ Her dog ....

50. People said that he could run two miles an hour.

→ It...

EXERCISE 7

1. Why did they use the computer carelessly?

→ Why ....?

2. You should help her.

→ She ....

3. We can see the picture of the city from the top of this hill.

→ The picture ....

4. People say that she loves him.

→ It is ....

5. They want me to write a letter.

→ I ....

6. I need English for my job.

→ English ....

7. You must watch your hands before having meal.

→ Your hands ....

8. We couldn't say anything.

→ Nothing ....

9. Were they driving the car when they saw the accident?

→ Was the car ....

10. Did you build this house in 1999?

→ Was ....

11. You should be a person that everyone can respect.

→ You ....

12. She decided to divide the lesson into three sections.

→ She decided ....

13. They didn't do anything that I told them to do last night.

→ Nothing ....

14. They heard he knock the door.

→ The door ....

15. Everyone believes him guiltless.

→ He ....

16. If I collected a lot of stamps, I would give you some.

→ If a ....

17. People believed that she had saved many boys from the terrible accident.

→ She ....

18. They advised me to buy this house.

→ I ....

19. We have built the house since 2007.

→ The ....

20. Who will take me to the place?

→ By ....

21. Why did the problem take place?

→ Why ....

22. I'm looking forward to spending a week in New York.

→ Spending ....

23. Where did the robbery take place?

→ Where ....

24. According to him, they left key at home, so we can open the cupboard.

→ According ....

25. Because of the rain, we delayed the flight until the next day.

→ The flight ....

26. "The woman has suffered from flu," people said.

→ The woman ....

27. They told the boy not to go too near the lake.

→ The boy ....

28. They never do the exercise.

→ Never..

29. I remember paying her 20 dollars.

→ She ....

30. By the time next year, I will have saved three thousand dollars.

→ Three ....

31. Do you know the city at all?

→ Is ....

32. Have you found a better hotel?

→ Has ....

33. Did you have a good time abroad?

→ Were ....

34. When I got there, I could see that they hadn't expected me.

→ When ……………………………………………………………………

35. He told me not to forget to send the letter.

→ I ………………………………………………………………………

36. "Would you like a cup of tea?" She said to me.

→ I ………………………………………………………………………

37. You look ill. You had better see your doctor.

→ You ……………………………………………………………………

38. They have made an important progress in agriculture.

→ An important …………………………………………………………

39. He asked me to show him my visa.

→ I ………………………………………………………………………

40. It's time we decided to do something.

→ It's time ………………………………………………………………

41. It is your duty to check all the documents before the meeting starts.

→ All ……………………………………………………………………

42. How does the film end?

→ How ……………………………………………………………………

43. I hate waiting.

→ I ………………………………………………………………………

44. She couldn't decide what to do first.

→ She ……………………………………………………………………

45. If you read the instructions carefully, you can answer the question.

→ If the instructions ……………………………………………………

46. Are you interested in the film you saw last night?

→ Are ……………………………………………………………………

47. I have written this book for twenty days.

→ This ……………………………………………………………………

48. Remember to check your telephone number.

→ Your ……………………………………………………………………

49. He is having his computer mended.

→ His ……………………………………………………………………………

50. I want to go home early.

→ I ……………………………………………………………………………

ANSWER KEY

EXERCISE 1

1. Coffee is drunk every morning.
2. Letters are delivered by the man every day.
3. English is studied instead of Japanese.
4. Two books are read a week.
5. Much more water is needed to produce the products.
6. His car is driven to the town on Sunday by him.
7. Hundreds of beautiful buildings are built every year.
8. His housework is usually done after school by him.
9. The lions are fed at 5:00 P.M.
10. Their homework is always finished before they go to bed.
11. Is pop music liked by you?
12. The uniform is worn when they go to school.
13. The children are looked after very carefully by her.
14. Vegetables are eaten every day.
15. Your application isn't accepted.
16. A lot of serious diseases are caused by air pollution.
17. She is helped with her homework every day.
18. The second hand computer is used carefully.
19. Nothing is said when I was met by him.
20. Three houses are designed each year.
21. The tourists are usually helped how to enter the cave.

22. Roses are grown in the garden.
23. Weapon is often tested in the area.
24. The light is always turned off before she goes out.
25. The book is divided into three chapters.
26. The shop is opened at 6:00 A.M every day.
27. What is done to help the poor?
28. What is the new hotel called?
29. The old church is visited every two years.
30. A lot of money is spent on shopping.
31. We are made to laugh a lot by hearing jokes made up by her.
32. Milk is used to make cheese.
33. Why isn't your book closed?
34. Two pages are read every morning.
35. I am called at night.
36. I am made to cry by sad stories.
37. Twenty cigarettes are smoked a day by him.
38. Films on TV are usually watched after dinner by us.
39. If the letter is finished typing before lunchtime, you won't be punished.
40. A taxi is taken to the office every morning by her.
41. The forests are protected by being planted a lot of trees.
42. The housework is done by myself.
43. The problem is solved in two hours.
44. I am taken to the zoo every night by my father.
45. Unless this bicycle is used carefully, I won't lend you it any more.
46. Football isn't played in the park.
47. Mary is sent to the hospital by Peter's father.
48. Dinner is always prepared before I come back home from office by my wife.

49. I am encouraged to overcome difficulties.

50. The difficult exercises are focused on.

EXERCISE 2

1. I wasn't taken to the party last night.

2. I was introduced to the director by my father.

3. How many books were bought yesterday evening by you?

4. Their students were made to be happy by the teacher.

5. A lot of old friends were invited to her wedding party by her.

6. Why weren't your parents visited by you?

7. When I was 10 years old, I wasn't allowed to read this book.

8. The car wasn't lent to the man.

9. The appointment had to be arranged again.

10. This city was destroyed last night by the earthquake.

11. When were they recognized?

12. Our car was stopped by the police when we went home.

13. Nothing was said before the computer was turned off.

14. How the sentences were translated into Vietnamese?

15. The key couldn't be found anywhere.

16. What was said to the man?

17. The book couldn't be read without glasses.

18. They used to be taught English by me.

19. The solution wasn't used to the problem.

20. An interesting speech was made last week by the president.

21. The exercise was too difficult to be done by the boy.

22. I was picked up at the airport.

23. I was kept waiting for them.

24. Your letter was received this morning.

25. The old car was sold when I was 20 years old.

26. I was shown the way to Da Nang Airport.

27. I wish I was met at the rail station by you.

28. The house was broken into last night.

29. When was the fire put out by the men?

30. How was the amount of money spent by you?

31. We were given difficult exercises last week by the teacher.

32. If your new address was known, you would be visited.

33. The boy was ordered to stand up immediately.

34. Weren't you told to be here by five o'clock?

35. By whom was this letter written?

36. Was this five – star – hotel built in 2007 by them?

37. In order to buy this house, much money had to be saved in five years by us.

38. I was taught how to pronounce the word.

39. They weren't expected to be here.

40. She was left a lot of money by her husband before he died.

41. The tickets were booked in advance.

42. What happened wasn't known by me and Mr. Cuong.

43. Were you taught how to behave in public by your parents?

44. Why was the date of the meeting changed?

45. It was too dark for the picture to be seen by us.

46. The luggage was carried.

47. How were the vases broken by her?

48. How many books were read in 2008 by you?

49. The song was sung beautifully last night by them.

50. The top of the hill couldn't be seen from the hotel.

EXERCISE 3

1. They haven't been seen by me since I moved to the city.

2. How long has this house been lived in by you?

3. The restaurant has been repaired recently.

4. Our duty has just been finished.

5. Has such an interesting book ever been read by you?

6. The news has never been heard about by me.

7. Much progress has been made since January by the men.

8. Now that this road has been built, it will take you only five minutes to get there.

9. The answer hasn't been found since the room was entered by you.

10. Has English been studied since last year?

11. A research on animal has been done by the students.

12. This is the first time a difficult situation has ever been encountered by me.

13. The important meeting hasn't been attended since 9:00 A.M by me.

14. How long has the weapon been tested?

15. Ha Noi has been visited many times since we lived in the village.

16. English has been spoken more fluently since you appeared.

17. That house has been sold for 3 years.

18. How long has the meal been prepared by you?

19. My English assignment has just been worked on since Monday.

20. Much fuel has been used by the car recently.

21.The confirm from the hotel hasn't been received so far.

22. The sentences have been corrected for 3 days.

23. Has a speech ever been made in public by you?

24. The Statue of Liberty has never been seen.

25. Smoking has been tried to give up several times.

26. Mr.Fred has been here since the wall was painted.

27. The missing file hasn't been found already.

28. The country has been divided into 3 parts since 1909.

29. The museum which will be finished building next year has been built for 5 years.

30. The television programs haven't been seen since lunchtime.

31. A decision has been made.

32. Their exercise hasn't been finished since they went to school.

33. Has the grass ever been cut by you?

34. The tower has been designed by the engineer since January.

35. My aunt hasn't been heard from by me so far.

36. I have been taken to the palace many times.

37. The letter has been written for 20 minutes.

38. I have been brought up by my uncles for twenty years.

39. Many English books have been published since 2008.

40. Your president has ever been met several times by me.

EXERCISE 4

1. The matter wasn't complained to the chairman.

2. Twenty pages have been read so far.

3. Your money should be saved in the bank.

4. Can I be told the way to the post office?

5. All light must be turned off before you leave the room.

6. The floor was being cleaned by her when I came in.

7. Music is being listened to now.

8. The letter was being read while she was cooking.

9. What would be said if you were in my situation?

10. Nothing was done when she lived in the city.

11. She has been met at the airport.

12. Many visitors are attracted by this beautiful city.

13. We weren't allowed to go out at night.

14. The roof wasn't repaired yesterday.

15. How many books were borrowed?

16. Are you interested in the book you were given yesterday?

17. The building was destroyed by hundreds of people last week.

18. The student was told not to make noise during the time.

19. The vase was being carried when they prepared to paint it.

20. He shouldn't be left at home or he will go out with his friends.

21. Nothing has been done since they moved to the village.

22. They have never been known to be unhappy.

23. The button mustn't be pressed while I am driving.

24. When was this work done?

25. Whatever I do, I am not believed in.

26. I was introduced to him, and we made friends together.

27. When the accident was talked about, they weren't mentioned.

28. We were divided into three groups when the game was taken part in.

29. His mistakes weren't pointed out to me.

30. They doubt whether the race can be won buy her.

31. This car can't be used by you because it will be needed this morning.

32. My application for the job was refused by him.

33. Were you given the book which was bought yesterday?

34. By whom was this letter typed?

35. I remember being given some candies.

36. What is the new restaurant called?

37. The house was broken into last night.

38. We should have been told how many people were invited.

39. He was awarded the golden medal.

40. Have you been told how to operate the machine by her?

41. How many pages are going to be read this evening?

42. By whom will this company be run when I go away?

43. Don't let yourself be seen.

44. I had the car mended buy my father.

45. I used to be made to look after her.

46. She likes being helped.

47. Their homework had been finished before the football match was watched.

48. If the room had been redecorated, it would have been nicer.

49. English has been studied for 15 years.

50. Nothing has been said since you were seen by her.

EXERCISE 5

1. The dinner has already been prepared.

2. My car was stolen by her last week.

3. The doctor had been met before she was phoned by you.

4. The flight will have to be cancelled because of the bad weather.

5. I was avoided meeting because I wasn't liked.

6. I was told to go out.

7. Nine students in the hall were told to keep silent during the time.

8. He is said to be very rich.

9. This is the first time we have been told about this.

10. TV was being watched by us at 4 pm yesterday evening.

11. The book shouldn't be put on the table.

12. He used to be taken to the city when he was a little boy.

13. He is known to do this work.

14. He was told to open the door.

15. This work wasn't done last week.

16. Holes are being dug in the garden by Tom and Mary.

17. Before this computer was used, we had asked you.

18. The dog must be left outside the house.

19. When was he last seen by you?

20. I hate being laughed at.

21. You will be told which bus to be caught.

22. I don't enjoy being made to do the work.

23. Were you seen to open the window?

24. Aren't you afraid you will be killed if they aren't given the money by you?

25. Your health should be taken care of and not been unaware of.

26. The tea was so hot that it wouldn't be drunk.

27. I was informed that my mother had been seen at the cinema.

28. It is believed that the woman was killed by him.

29. The trouble started when I was told to reuse the machine.

30. It was thought that Mai was the most intelligent student.

31. They expected to be met at the airport by me.

32. They want to be bought a new TV set by me.

33. I don't like eating the fish, but I am forced to eat it everyday by my father.

34. I was given a chance to be a teacher at the school.

35. They don't mind being borrowed the car by you.

36. At the end of this month, the course will have been finished.

37. They hoped to be seen you yesterday.

38. She doesn't mind being given you some advices.

39. My own Tet holidays won't be spent this year.

40. I had to be picked up at the rail station.

41. Why is the meal going to be had by you?

42. It is so hot that nothing can be done until it gets cool.

43. It's no use asking them to stay at home because the party can't help being joined.

44. You would never be missed visiting.

45. If you dial the numbers, you will be helped.

46. If you want to be good at English, it must be practiced speaking everyday.

47. Your house will look very beautiful once it has been finished redecorating.

48. If you want to be seen him, please tell me.

49. What would be said if the present was given you by me?

50. I am woken by the noise.

EXERCISE 6

1. We suggested that a short rest should be taken.

2. What language is spoken in the country?

3. You will be seen off at the Church.

4. They were said to buy this house last month.

5. Has my letter got by you yet?

6. The light went out while dinner was being had.

7. How much money am I given?

8. She was asked to let us see him off.

9. The mistake shouldn't be made again.

10. The exercise was found difficult.

11. The house shouldn't be bought.

12. I was helped by him.

13. Where were your keys put?

14. Everything is being prepared for my sister's wedding.

15. When I was 10 years old, I wasn't allowed to go fishing with my friends.

16. He was said to have won the first prize.

17. Can the text be translated from English into Vietnamese?

18. The house looks very old because it hasn't been painted for 2 years.

19. A speech on Chemistry was made by my uncle last week.

20. Travelling around the world was spent 3 days by us.

21. Why was I laughed at?

22. A car is going to be driven at 8 am tomorrow morning.

23. How is the sentence made?

24. You were seen climbing over the window.

25. She was advised to put the money under the bed.

26. How can she be taken to the zoo?

27. The door needn't be closed.

28. A house opposite my school is going to be built.

29. I was promised to be taken to the countryside.

30. She was believed to have passed the examination.

31. We are sure that everything will be prepared before we come.

32. The light was turned off and the door was closed by her.

33. Letters are never sent to his close friends.
34. The problem can be solved faster by the computer than you.
35. The test should be examined carefully.
36. I was asked if she could be helped to solve the problem by me.
37. She has to be apologised by you because her watch was stolen by you.
38. They ought to leave the room early or the train will be missed.
39. I used to be made to cry by her.
40. Why wasn't she called by you?
41. The book wasn't liked, so it was given back to me.
42. The shirt is going to be sewed by my mother.
43. You are having lots of money. How is it spent (by you)?
44. Fortunately, I was showed the way to the bus stop.
45. I like some photographs to be taken at the place.
46. She wasn't told the truth about the problem.
47. If I had been bought a new car, I would have been happy.
48. If it rains, football can't be played.
49. Her dog is usually fed at 7 am every morning by her.
50. It was said that he could run two miles an hour.

EXERCISE 7

1. Why was the computer used carelessly?
2. She should be helped.
3. The picture of the city can be seen from the stop of the hill.
4. It is said that she loves him.
5. I was wanted to write a letter.
6. English is needed for my job.
7. Your hands must be washed before you have meal.
8. Nothing could be said.
9. Was the car being driven when the accident was seen?
10. Was the house built in 1999?
11. You should be a person that can be respected.
12. She decided that the lesson should be divided into three sections.

13. Nothing was done as I told them to do last night.
14. The door was heard to knock.
15. He is believed to be guiltless.
16. If a lot of stamps were collected, I would give you some.
17. She was believed to have saved many boys from the terrible accident.
18. I was advised to buy this house.
19. The house has been built since 2007.
20. By whom was I taken to the place?
21. Why was the problem taken place?
22. Spending a week in New York is going to be looked forward to.
23. Where was the robbery taken place?
24. According to him, key was left at home, so the cupboard can be opened.
25. The flight was delayed until the next day by the rain.
26. The woman was said to have suffered from flu.
27. The boy was told not to go too near the lake.
28. Never is the exercise done.
29. She was paid 20 dollars.
30. Three thousand dollars will have been saved by the time next year by me.
31. Is the city known at all by you?
32. Has a better hotel been found?
33. Were you had a good time abroad?
34. When I got there, I could see that I hadn't been expected.
35. I was told not to forget to send the letter.
36. I was offered a cup of tea.
37. You look ill. Your doctor should been seen by you.
38. An important progress in agriculture has been made.
39. I was asked to show him my visa.
40. It's time we decided that something should be done.
41. All the documents have to be checked by you before the meeting is started.
42. How is the film ended?

43. I hate being waited.

44. She couldn't decide what to be done first.

45. If the instructions are read carefully, The question can be answered by you.

46. Are you interested in the film which was seen last night?

47. This book has been written for 20 days by me.

48. Your telephone number must be remembered.

49. His computer is going to be mended.

50. I want to be gone home early.

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 5: CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN)

✱ *Giới thiệu*

Câu điều kiện gồm có hai phần: Phần một là phần nêu lên điều kiện (thường bắt đầu bằng if), người ta thường gọi đó là If-clause. Phần hai là phần nêu lên kết quả, chúng ta thường gọi phần này là Main-clause (Mệnh đề chính). Có những trường hợp nó còn được gọi là Result clause (Mệnh đề kết quả).

✱ *Phân loại câu điều kiện*

+ Câu điều kiện loại I

Câu điều kiện loại I diễn tả hành động hay sự việc có thể xảy ra trong tương lai hoặc hiện tại.

Cấu trúc: If-clause   Main- clause
↓   ↓
simple present   simple future

Ex: If you study hard, you will pass the test.

Nếu các em học hành siêng năng thì các em sẽ vượt qua bài kiểm tra.

Mệnh đề If-clause có thể đứng trước mệnh đề Main-clause và nó cũng có thể đứng sau mệnh đề Main-clause. Nếu nó đứng trước mệnh đề Main-clause thì hai mệnh đề If-clause và Main-clause cách nhau bằng một dấu phẩy (,). Nếu mệnh đề If-clause đứng sau mệnh đề Main-clause thì If đóng vai trò như một từ nối.

Ex: You won't be met him if you don't get up early.

Bạn sẽ không gặp được anh ta nếu bạn không dậy sớm.

+ Câu điều kiện loại II

Câu điều kiện loại II diễn tả hành động hay sự việc trái với thực tế ở hiện tại.

Cấu trúc: If- clause Main-clause

↓ ↓

simple past S+ would/could+ V-bare infinitive

Ex: If I had enough money, I would buy this book.

Nếu tôi có đủ tiền, tôi sẽ mua quyển sách này. (Thực tế tôi thiếu tiền.)

Ở mệnh đề If-clause, nếu chúng ta sử dụng động từ to be thì Were được dùng cho tất cả các ngôi.

Ex: If she were you, she wouldn't go there.

Nếu cô ta là bạn thì cô ta sẽ không đến đó. (Thực tế cô ta không thể là bạn.)

+ Câu điều kiện loại III

Diễn tả hành động hay sự việc không có thực trong quá khứ.

Cấu trúc: If- clause Main- clause

↓ ↓

Past perfect S+ would/could + have+ V-3/ed

Ex: If I had gone there, I would have given you the message.

Nếu tôi đã đến đó thì tôi đã đưa cho bạn tin nhắn đó rồi. (Thực sự thì tôi đã không đến đó.)

✱✱ Quan điểm cá nhân

Rất nhiều em học sinh thường hay nhầm lẫn cách dùng của cả ba loại câu điều kiện này. Để giúp các em dễ nhớ và dễ sử dụng đúng vai trò của các câu điều kiện, các em cần nên nhớ câu nói sau:"***Loại I chỉ tương lai, loại II chỉ hiện tại và loại III chỉ quá khứ.***"

Một số cách diễn đạt đặc biệt khác của câu điều kiện

1. Unless = if ....not: trừ phi, nếu không ....thì

Vì unless = if..........not nên mệnh đề dùng unless luôn luôn ở thể khẳng định.

Ex: Unless you water the rose every day, it will die.

Nếu bạn không tưới nước hàng ngày cho cây hoa hồng thì nó sẽ chết.

= If you don't water the rose every day, it will die.

2. Without (Nếu không) = If.........not

Ex: Without your help, I wouldn't have finished my homework.

Nếu không có sự giúp đỡ của anh thì tôi đã không thể hoàn thành xong bài tập của tôi.

3. But for (Nếu không có/Nếu không vì)

Ex: But for the president's absence, the meeting wouldn't have been cancelled.

Nếu không vì sự vắng mặt của ông chủ tịch thì cuộc họp đã không bị hủy.

4. Provided (that)/ Providing (that): Miễn là

Ex: Provided that you use the machine carefully, I will lend you it.

Miễn là bạn sử dụng cái máy này cẩn thận, tôi sẽ cho bạn mượn nó.

5. If only (Giá mà)

+ If only + simple present/ simple future: dùng để diễn tả sự hy vọng

Ex: If only I go with you now.

Ước gì tôi đi cùng bạn bây giờ

+ If only + simple past: diễn tả ước muốn không có thực ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai.

Ex: If only he were here.

Giá mà anh ta ở đây. (Thực tế anh ta không ở đây.)

+ If only + past perfect: diễn tả mong ước không thể thực hiện được trong quá khứ.

Ex: If only I had gone to the party last night.

Giá mà tôi tham dự buổi tiệc tối hôm qua.

6. As if/ As though: Như thể là

+ Dùng với thì hiện tại hoặc tương lai để diễn tả việc người nói có thể xảy ra ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai.

Ex: It looks as if it's going to rain.

Trời như sắp mưa.

+ Dùng were hoặc thì quá khứ đơn để diễn tả việc người nói là không có thật hoặc khó tin ở hiện tại.

Ex: He loooked as if he saw a ghost.

Anh ta trông như nhìn thấy ma.

+ Dùng với thì quá khứ hoàn thành để diễn tả điều người nói là không

có thực hoặc khó tin ở quá khứ.

Ex: He loooked as if he had known everything.

Anh ta trông như biết tất cả mọi điều.

7. If it hadn't been for + noun, S + would/could+ have+ V-ed/pp

S + wouldn't/couldn't+ have+ V-ed/pp

Ex: If it hadn't been for your presence, the room would have been quite.

Nếu không có mặt của bạn thì căn phòng có lẽ rất yên lặng.

8. Even if (Ngay cả) được dùng để chỉ sự tương phản

Ex: Even if he is tired, he won't stay at home.

Ngay cả khi mệt anh ta cũng không ở nhà.

9. Had + S + V-3/ed, S + could/would+have +V-3/ed (loại III)

Ex: Had he been earlier, he wouldn't have missed the train.

Nếu anh ta đi sớm hơn, anh ta đã không trễ chuyến tàu.

Bài tập

Rewrite the following sentences by using conditional sentences only.

1. We didn’t visit you because we had no more free time.

→ If we ....

2. You can’t take part in the game. It is raining heavily.

→ If it ....

3. They cancelled the flight, so they didn’t turn up at the meeting.

→ If it ....

4. Unless you water the tree, it will die.

→ The tree ....

5. The tea was too hot for me to drink.

→ If ....

6. The car is too expensive for us to buy.

→ If ....

7. The heavy rain prevented us from getting there.

→ Without ....

8. We were tired. Fortunately, they helped us finish the work.

→ If it ....

9. Fortunately, she arrived in time to save the boy.

→ If it ....

10. You had better have your house repaired.

→ If it ....

11. Give me the money or I will kill her.

→ If you ....

12. We can't listen to you because of the noise.

→ If ....

13. He died of lung cancer because he smoked so much.

→ If ....

14. We don't invite many friends to the party as we are very busy.

→ If ....

15. They stopped working because they had a quarrel.

→ If it ....

16. I study hard to pass the examination. I don't want to make my parents sad.

→ My parents ....

17. Why don't you enter the room? I don't have the key.

→ If ....

18. It's cold. I would rather you stayed at home.

→ If it ....

19. We haven't met him since he left for Tokyo. We didn't know his address.

→ Had ....

20. It is so dark that we can't see anything.

→ If ....

21. I don't know what to say to her.

→ What ....

22. I don't know what to do. So, I ask you for advices.

→ If you ....

23. She was absent from school because she was sick.

→ If it ....

24. You ought to leave the party now if you are to catch the last bus.

→ If you ....

25. Once this street has been rebuilt, it will take you only two hours to get there.

→ If ....

26. We didn't arrive in time to see him.

→ We ....

27. They got lost because they didn't have a map.

→ If ....

28. Be punctual or you will miss the train.

→ You ....

29. Unless you know her new telephone number, you can't phone her.

→ You can only ....

30. I had a flu last week. I couldn't go to school during the time.

→ If it ....

31. You had better save your money in the bank.

→ If it ....

32. It was your laziness which led to your failure.

→ If ....

33. She gets up early so that she won't be late for school.

→ If she ....

34. His father is very sad because he failed the examination again.

→ If he ....

35. She didn't go over her illness as we expected because she stopped using the medicine.

→ Had she ....

36. They couldn't put up the tent because of the strong wind.

→ Without ....

37. He didn't pay attention to my words, so he couldn't solve the problem.

→ If he ....

38. I'm looking forward to traveling around the world, but I don't have enough money.

→ If I ....

39. They arrive at the hall early so as to meet the singer.

→ If they ....

40. They are too old to take part in the social activities.

→ If they ....

41. We can't afford to buy the house.

→ If we ....

42. They had a terrible accident because they drove too fast.

→ But for ....

43. She advised him to take up tennis.

→ If she ....

44. When she comes here, can you help me give her the letter?

→ If she ....

45. Will you visit me tomorrow? I don't know, it depends on the weather.

→ If ....

46. I told him to give up smoking.

→ If I ....

47. Her knowledge of English is not good enough to be a tourist guide.

→ If her ....

48. To be a teacher, you have to study harder.

→ If you ....

49. So far they have read only 10 pages. They won't finish reading the book on Friday.

→ Unless ....

50. The man threatens to kill the woman if she doesn't tell him anything.

→ If ....

51. Unless you are studious, I won't take you to Da Lat City.

→ If you ....

52. I suggest that you should visit her now.

→ If I ....

53. She would love to be rich.

→ If ....

54. In case of emergency, phone me immediately.

→If there ....

55. She warned me not to press that button because it was very hot.

→ "If you ...."

56. It was her own fault that she lost all the money. She wasn't careful.

→ If she ....

57. I can't let you go because you don't have your own identification card.

→ If you ....

58. We had a lot of trouble because we didn't have passports.

→ If..

59. You made the mistake because you didn't listen to me.

→ If you ....

60. The more we cut trees, the more floods we suffer.

→ If we ....

61. Unless you use the car carefully, I don't lend you it any more.

→ If you ....

62. We had a quarrel and that's the reason why we haven't met him for ages.

→ If ....

63. Unfortunately, we didn't arrive in time to attend the speech.

→ We ....

64. He denied having stolen her car because we had no any evidence.

→ If we ....

65. You shouldn't go out now. It is raining heavily.

→ If I ....

66. I don't see him very often because I am always busy.

→ If I ....

67. I can't see you tomorrow. I have to visit my mother.

→ I ....

68. I don't know many people. I am lonely.

→ If I ....

69. It is very hot, we can't have lunch outside.

→ If it ....

70. She is too poor to stay at the hospital for a long time.

→ If she ....

71. The soup is very hot. I can't eat it.

→ I ....

72. I wouldn't mind lending her some more money.

→ If ....

73. I'm willing to help you when you need me.

→ I ....

74. Why don't you get rid of smoking?

→ If ....

75. I would love to live in Da Lat City.

→ If only ....

76. Because my father wanted to spend the holiday in Hue City, we went to the city last year.

→ Had ....

77. But for the computer, we couldn't have known the news.

→ If we ....

78. Let's invite him to your wedding party.

→ I ....

79. If you want my advice, I would buy this book.

→ If I ....

80. Without your consideration, my application for the job would have been turned down.

→ If it ....

81. Unless it rains soon, we will lack of water.

→ If it ……………………………………………………………………………

82. If you hadn't known English well, you wouldn't have spoken to him.

→ If it ……………………………………………………………………………

83. It was the man who saved the boy.

→ If it ……………………………………………………………………………

84. It's high time you phoned him.

→ If ……………………………………………………………………………

85. If the work is finished by lunch time, you can meet me.

→ Unless ……………………………………………………………………………

86. Unless you are lazy, you won't be accepted.

→ Providing that ……………………………………………………………………

87. He promises to help me if I work hard.

→ Provided ……………………………………………………………………………

88. Turn off all lights before you go out.

→ If you ……………………………………………………………………………

89. If you don't want him to be angry with you. I suggest you apologise to him as soon as possible.

→ If ……………………………………………………………………………

90. Unless you watch TV everyday, you won't know much new news.

→ If you ……………………………………………………………………………

91. You can't go shopping unless you have money.

→ If you ……………………………………………………………………………

92. Being told earlier, we could avoid the flame.

→ If we hadn't ……………………………………………………………………

93. We can't be successful without Peter's ideas.

→ If ……………………………………………………………………………

94. According to Mr. John, his life is depended on his father's property.

→ Without ……………………………………………………………………………

95. Only when you tell him will he perfect his duties.

→ If you ……………………………………………………………………………

96. I can't see anything without my glasses.

→ If I ....

97. I find it difficult for me to read the letter because it is very dark.

→ If it ....

98. He lives on his salary after he left home.

→ If he ....

99. You have to ask for your parents' advices before getting there.

→ If you ....

100. We are grateful to you. We would have had a lot of trouble if you hadn't helped us.

→ Without ....

101. It's no use buying this hat.

→ If ....

B. Now complete the following sentences by using your ideas.

The first one is done for you.

o. If I had met you, ...

→ If I had met you, *I would have told you about the story.*

1. If you don't close the window,..

→ ....

2. You would have got wet ....

→ ....

3. .... if you don't study harder.

→ ....

4. If it hadn't rained last night, ...

→ ....

5. You will be seen if ....

→ ....

6. If I were you, ...

→ ....

7. You wouldn't be tired ....

→ ....

8. If you are dishonest, ...

→ ....

9. Unless you look after your father well, ...

→ ....

10. You can go out with your friends tonight ....

→ ....

11. .... if they heard the information.

→ ....

12. ....if he had attended the English class.

→ ....

13. He would give you three candies ....

→ ....

14. If she'd divorced him ....

→ ....

15. It would be the highest building..

→ ....

16. We would win the first prize ....

→ ....

17. If we have a computer, ...

→ ....

18. She wouldn't give you the message ....

→ ....

19. He will be killed ....

→ ....

20. We will pollute the river ....

→ ....

21. The world would be better ....

→ ....

22. Your voice would be better ....

→ ....

23. If he had listened to his parents, ……………………………………………………

→ ……………………………………………………………………………

24. I'm sure he will agree with you on that matter……………………………………

→ ……………………………………………………………………………

25. ………………………………………………………if you were a billionaire?

→ ……………………………………………………………………………

26. If you had had lunch, ……………………………………………………………

→ ……………………………………………………………………………

27. If you hadn't worn your dark glasses, …………………………………………

→ ……………………………………………………………………………

28. I would introduce you to him …………………………………………………

→ ……………………………………………………………………………

29. I would invite you to the party ………………………………………………

→ ……………………………………………………………………………

30. Where would you have your seat ……………………………………………?

→ ……………………………………………………………………………

31. She would be very happy ………………………………………………………

→ ……………………………………………………………………………

32. ……………………………………………………………… if it hadn't been dark.

→ ……………………………………………………………………………

33. If I have a job, …………………………………………………………………

→ ……………………………………………………………………………

34. ……………………………………………………… if you were in my situation?

→ ……………………………………………………………………………

35. If I were rich, …………………………………………………………………

→ ……………………………………………………………………………

36. If we had the choice, …………………………………………………………

→ ……………………………………………………………………………

37. ……………………………………………………………… if I knew English.

→ ……………………………………………………………………………

38. If you open your book, ...

→ ....

39. Without his presence, ...

→ ....

40. Had he done his exercises, ...

→ ....

41. If there weren't many cars in our city, ...

→ ....

42. .... we won't understand the new lesson.

→ ....

43. Where would you go ....

→ ....

44. .... if you have three wishes?

→ ....

45. If you did your homework ....

→ ....

46. .... if you are asked to do the thing.

→ ....

47. .... if you don't stop smoking.

→ ....

48. Unless you make friend with him, ...

→ ....

49. If you want a book, ...

→ ....

50. If you had written to me, ...

→ ....

51. .... if I have free time.

→ ....

52. .... I would tell you.

→ ....

53. ....if you study it everyday.

→ ....

54. If you open the book everyday, ...

→ ....

55. I would be disappointed ....

→ ....

56. If you don’t have ticket, ...

→ ....

57. If you don’t have your house repaired, ...

→ ....

58. We couldn’t continue our lesson...

→ ....

59. If my horse won the race,...

→ ....

60. ....if they had solved the problem well.

→ ....

61. .... if the woman hadn’t complained.

→ ....

62. Had you not apologised to her, ...

→ ....

63. You could get married ....

→ ....

64. Passengers will be told to seaten their belts...

→ ....

65. We can see no difference between them ....

→ ....

66. The boat wouldn’t have drifted away...

→ ....

67. The room would be larger..

→ ....

68. We will carry out the work..

→ ………………………………………………………………………

69. If you are going to improve your English, ...

→ ………………………………………………………………………

70. ...., you would join the game.

→ ………………………………………………………………………

71. Everybody won't believe in you...

→ ………………………………………………………………………

72. If it hadn't been for the will,..

→ ………………………………………………………………………

73. If you drive a motorbike without a safety helmet,......................................

74. ...., there won't be fresh air.

→ ………………………………………………………………………

75. ...., we won't have difficulty in doing it.

→ ………………………………………………………………………

76. But for your book,...

→ ………………………………………………………………………

77. If it is cool,..

→ ………………………………………………………………………

78. I will answer your questions..

→ ………………………………………………………………………

79... we won't see them.

→ ………………………………………………………………………

80. ....they will have to repeat the course.

→ ………………………………………………………………………

81. If you do exercises every morning,...

→ ………………………………………………………………………

82. I could go shopping with her..

→ ………………………………………………………………………

83. If there were many green trees, ...

→ ………………………………………………………………………

84. You will have to wait for the doctor..

→ ....

85. ....if we don't have a watch.

→ ....

86. I will give you a hand..

→ ....

87. If you drove slowly,..

→ ....

88. If you don't know grammar,..

→ ....

89. If you had driven faster,..

→ ....

90. If there were no buses,..

→ ....

91. We will walk to the zoo..

→ ....

92. .... if you aren't here.

→ ....

93. .... if they had phoned me.

→ ....

94. We could have avoided that day..

→ ....

95. Wars will never be stopped..

→ ....

96. Nobody likes you..

→ ....

97. Everything will be ready..

→ ....

98. .... if there were a river.

→ ....

99. ...., we could have managed to open the door.

→ ....

100. We will be successful..

→ ....

ANSWER KEY

1. If we had had more free time, we could have visited you.
2. If it didn't rain heavily, we could take part in the game.
3. If they hadn't cancelled the flight, they would have turned up at the meeting.
4. The tree will die if you don't water it.
5. If the tea hadn't been hot, I could have drunk it.
6. If the car were cheaper, we could buy it.
7. Without the heavy rain, we could have got there.
8. If it hadn't been for their help, we couldn't have finished the work.
9. If it hadn't been for her timely arrival, the boy wouldn't have been saved.
10. If I were you, I would have the house repaired.
11. If you don't give me the money, I will kill her.
12. If it weren't noisy, we could listen to you. / If it weren't the noise, we could listen to you.
13. If he hadn't smoked, he wouldn't have died of lung cancer.
14. If we aren't very busy, we will invite many friends to the party.
15. If it hadn't been for a quarrel, I wouldn't have stopped working.
16. My parents will be sad if I don't pass the examination.
17. If I had the key, I could enter the room.
18. If I were you, I would stay at home.
19. Had we known his address, we couldn't have helped meeting him.
20. If it weren't dark, we could see everything.
21. What would you say to her if you were me?
22. If you were me, what would you do?
23. If it hadn't been for her sickness, she wouldn't have been absent from school.
24. If you don't want to miss the last bus, you ought to leave the party now.
25. If this street is rebuilt, it will take you only two hours to get there.
26. If we had arrived earlier, we could have seen him / If we had been earlier, we could have seen him.
27. If they had had a map, they wouldn't have got lost.

28. You will miss the train if you are not punctual.

29. You can only phone her if you know her new telephone number.

30. If it hadn't been for a flu, I couldn't have been absent from school last week.

31. If I were you, I would save money in the bank.

32. If you hadn't been lazy, you would have been successful.

33. If she doesn't get up early, she will be late for school.

34. If he passed the examination, his father were happy.

35. Had she not stopped using the medicine, her illness could have gone over as we expected.

36. Without the strong wind, they could have put up the tent.

37. If he had paid attention to my words, he could have solved the problem.

38. If I had enough money, I would travel around the world.

39. If they don't arrive at the hall early, they won't meet the singer.

40. If they were younger, they could take part in the social activities.

41. If we had much more money, we would buy the house.

42. But for the overspeed, they wouldn't have had a terrible accident.

43. If she were him, she would take up tennis.

44. If she comes here, will you help me give her the letters?

45. If the weather is good, I will visit you tomorrow.

46. If I were him, I would give up smoking.

47. If her knowledge of English were better, she would be a tourist guide.

48. If you want to be a teacher, you have to study harder.

49. Unless they read the book faster, they won't finish reading it on Friday.

50. If the woman doesn't tell the man anything, he will kill her.

51. If you are studious, I will take you to Da Lat City.

52. If I were you, I would visit her now.

53. If only she were rich.

54. If there is an emergency, phone me immediately.

55. "If you press this button, you will be heated."

56. If she had been careful, she wouldn't have lost all the money.

57. If you had your own identification card, I would let you go.

58. If we had had passports, we wouldn't have had trouble.
59. If you had listened to me, you wouldn't have made the mistake.
60. If we stop cutting trees, there won't be floods.
61. If you use the car carefully, I will lend you it again.
62. If it hadn't been for the quarrel, we could have met him for ages.
63. We could have attended the speech if we had arrived.
64. If we had had evidence, he couldn't have denied stealing her car.
65. If I were you, I wouldn't go now because it is raining heavily.
66. If I weren't always busy, I could see him so often.
67. I will see you tomorrow if I don't visit my mother.
68. If I knew many people, I wouldn't be lonely.
69. If it weren't very hot, we could have lunch outside.
70. If she were rich, she could stay at the hospital for a long time.
71. I could eat the soup if it weren't very hot.
72. If I were you, I would lend her some more money.
73. I will help you if you need me.
74. If I were you, I would get rid of smoking.
75. If only I could live in Da Lat City.
76. Had my father not wanted to spend the holiday in Hue City, we wouldn't have gone to the city last year.
77. If we hadn't had the computer, we couldn't have known the news.
78. I would invite him to the wedding party if I were you.
79. If I were you, I would buy this book.
80. If it hadn't been for your consideration, my application for the job would have been turned down.
81. If it doesn't rain soon, we will lack of water.
82. If it hadn't been for your excellent knowledge of English, you couldn't have spoken to him.
83. If it hadn't been for the man's help, the boy wouldn't have been saved.
84. If I were you, I would phone him.
85. Unles the work isn't finished buy lunch time, you can't be met me.
86. Providing that you aren't lazy, you will be accepted.

87. Provided I work hard, he will help me.

88. If you go out, all lights will be turned off.

89. If I were you, I would apologize to him as soon as possible.

90. If you don't watch TV everyday, you won't know much new news.

91. If you don't have money, you can't go shopping.

92. If we hadn't been told earlier, we couldn't have avoided the flame.

93. If there isn't Peter's ideas, we won't be successful.

94. Without his father's property, he will have a lot of trouble in life.

95. If you don't tell him, his duties won't be perfected.

96. If I don't use my glasses, I will see nothing.

97. If it weren't dark, I could read the letter easily.

98. If he didn't have his own salary, he would have lots of trouble after he left home.

99. If you don't ask for your parents' advices before getting there, you will know nothing about the matter.

100. Without your help, we would have had a lot of trouble.

101. If I were you, I wouldn't buy this hat.

B. ĐÁP ÁN ĐỀ NGHỊ

1. If you don't close the window, we will be seen.

2. You would have got wet if you hadn't worn the raincoat.

3. You won't pass the important examination if you don't study harder.

4. If it hadn't rained last night, the tree would have died.

5. You will be seen if you manage to climb over the fence.

6. If I were you, I wouldn't go ahead.

7. You wouldn't be tired if you didn't walk for long.

8. If you are dishonest, you will be punished.

9. Unless you look after your farther well, his heath will be worse.

10. You can go out with your friends tonight if you finish your homework.

11. They would tell you if they heard the information.

12. He could have understood the lesson if he had attended the English class.

13. He would give you three candies if you paid him three cents.
14. If she had divorced him, she would have been unhappy.
15. It would be the highest building if it were a twenty five floor building.
16. We would win the first prize if we came first.
17. If we have a computer, we will type this letter.
18. She wouldn't give you the message if you didn't come here.
19. He will be killed if he doesn't obey them.
20. We will pollute the river if we don't stop throwing the garbage it.
21. The world would be better if you there weren't wars.
22. Your voice would be better if you drink much water.
23. If he had listened to his parents, he wouldn't have failed the examination.
24. I'm sure he will agree with you on that matter if you ask him.
25. What would you do if you were a billionaire?
26. If you had had lunch, you wouldn't have been hungry.
27. If you hadn't worn your dark glasses, you would have been recognized.
28. I would introduce you to him if you came here.
29. I would invite you to the party if you were in the city.
30. Where would you have your seat if you were in the restaurant?
31. She would be very happy if you helped her repair the house.
32. We could have recognized him if it hadn't been dark.
33. If I have a job, I will live on my salary.
34. What would you do if you were in my situation?
35. If I were rich, I would travel around the world.
36. If we had the choice, we would live with you.
37. I would have a good job if I knew English.
38. If you open your book, I will ask you to stop your test.
39. Without his presence, we wouldn't have had the funny story.
40. Had he done his exercises, he could have understood the situation.
41. If there weren't many cars in our city, there won't be much pollution.
42. If you don't prepare our lesson at home, we won't understand the new lesson.

43. Where would you go if you travelled in our city?
44. What will you think if you have three wishes?
45. If you did your homework, you wouldn't have had marks.
46. What will you do if you are asked to do the thing?
47. Your health won't be better if you don't stop smoking.
48. Unless you make friend with him, he will be very strict.
49. If you want a book, I will buy it for you.
50. If you had written to me, I could have known where you are now.
51. I will read the book if I have free time.
52. If I saw him, I would tell you.
53. You will like it if you study it everyday.
54. If you open the book everyday, you will widen your knowledge.
55. I would be disappointed if you told lie.
56. If you don't have ticket, I won't let you enter the hall.
57. If you don't have your house repaired, you will be in the danger of the storm.
58. We couldn't continue our lesson if you kept making noise.
59. If my horse won the race, I would have much money.
60. We wouldn't have been disappointed if they had solved the problem well.
61. Nothing would have been done if the woman hadn't complained.
62. Had you not apologized to her, she would have been angry.
63. You could get married if you were old enough.
64. Passengers will be told to seaten their belts if the plane takes off.
65. We can see no difference between them if he doesn't have long hair.
66. The boat wouldn't have drifted away if it had tied up properly.
67. The room would be larger if there weren't the television.
68. We will carry out the work if it doesn't rain.
69. If you are going to improve your English, you will need a good teacher of English.
70. If you had free time, you would join the game.
71. Everybody won't believe you if you are unreliable.

72. If it hadn't been for the will, she couldn't have become a billionaire.

73. If you drive a motorbike without a safety helmet, you will be in the police station.

74. If there are no green trees, there won't be fresh air.

75. If you teach us, we don't have difficulty in doing it.

76. But for your book, we wouldn't have known what to read.

77. If it is cool, we will go on a picnic tomorrow.

78. I will answer your questions if you meet me.

79. If we don't drive faster, we won't see them.

80. If they fail the test, they will have to repeat the course.

81. If you do exercises every morning, you will be healthier.

82. I could go shopping with her if I called on her.

83. If there were many green trees, water couldn't run off like this.

84. You will have to wait for the doctor if you want to check your health.

85. We don't know time if we don't have a watch.

86. If you want to be helped, I will give you a hand.

87. If you drove slowly, we couldn't catch him.

88. If you don't know grammar, you won't make right sentences.

89. If you had driven faster, we wouldn't have been late for the meeting.

90. If there were no buses, we would take a taxi to get there.

91. We will walk to the zoo if there is no a taxi.

92. Children will be disorder if you aren't here.

93. I could have known where they are living if they had phoned me.

94. We could have avoided that day if you had advised me in advanced.

95. Wars will never be stopped if we don't share love together.

96. Nobody likes you if you impolite.

97. Everything will be ready if we have more time.

98. The city will be more beautiful if there were a river.

99. If we had had key, we could have managed to open the door.

100. We will be successful if we are patient.

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 6: EXPRESSIONS WITH WISH (CÂU DIỄN ĐẠT VỚI *WISH*)

1. Wish diễn đạt một ước muốn hoặc một điều gì đó không có thật trong tương lai:

S + wish + S + could/would + V-bare infinitive + ...

Ex: I wish you would come here.

(Tôi ước gì bạn sẽ đến đây. (sự thật là bạn sẽ không đến)

2. Wish diễn đạt điều trái với thực tế hiện tại:

S + wish (that) + simple past

Ex: I wish I knew your new address.

(Tôi ước gì tôi biết địa chỉ mới của bạn. (Thật sự là tôi không biết)

3. Wish diễn đạt điều trái với thực tế trong quá khứ:

S + wish + S + had + V3/ed

Ex: I wish I had had time to play the game last night:

Ước gì tối hôm qua tôi có thời gian để chơi trò chơi đó.

(Thực tế tối hôm qua tôi không có thời gian)

BÀI TẬP

1. I don't know him.

→ I wish ....

2. She isn't there.

→ I wish ....

3. I haven't any pens.

→ I wish ....

4. I live in the city, but I don't like it.

→ I wish ....

5. I didn't visit her last year.

→ She wishes ....

6. She has eaten too much and now she feels sick.

→ She wishes ....

7. I love her, but she doesn't love me.

→I wish ....

8. They destroyed the house to build the park.

→ I wish the ....

9. This is the first time I have visited this city. I would like to go to the museum but I didn't bring a map.

→ I wish ....

10. The heavy rain prevented us from running.

→ I wish the ....

11. They didn't give me any books.

→ I wish the ....

12. I am very busy now. I can't help you.

→ I wish ....

13. You should write more carefully in the future.

→ I wish you ....

14. I can't attend your class tomorrow.

→ I wish ....

15. They didn't invite her to the party.

→ They wish ....

16. He failed the examination again.

→ He wishes ....

17. If I knew her address, I would tell you.

→ I wish ....

18. If it rains tomorrow, the air will be cool.

→ I wish ....

19. If I had arrived at the station on time, I wouldn't have missed the train.

→ I wish ....

20. I'm sure, she can't be free tomorrow.

→ I wish ....

21. I don't want to meet you, because you are a liar.

→ I wish ....

22. I want to be in Ha Noi Capital now.

→ I wish ……………………………………………………………………

23. I can't meet you tomorrow. I have to work all day.

→ I wish ……………………………………………………………………

24. It is very hot. I hate hot weather.

→ I wish ……………………………………………………………………

25. If I were you, I wouldn't buy this shirt.

→ I wish ……………………………………………………………………

26. I am ill, but I have to work tomorrow.

→ I wish ……………………………………………………………………

27. Why did you decide to get there?

→ I wish ……………………………………………………………………

28. Everybody doesn't like eating this food.

→ Everybody ………………………………………………………………

29. I am not rich enough to have a more beautiful house.

→ I wish ……………………………………………………………………

30. I don't know your telephone number, so I couldn't phone you.

→ I wish ……………………………………………………………………

31. There are too many cars in the city, so it is polluted.

→ I wish ……………………………………………………………………

32. We are suffering the air pollution because of the smoke from the factory.

→ I wish ……………………………………………………………………

33. He'd like to give up smoking, but he can't.

→ He wishes ………………………………………………………………

34. I would like to have my house repaired.

→ I wish ……………………………………………………………………

35. I didn't wear a warm coat, so I had a flu.

→ I wish ……………………………………………………………………

36. She has no time for me.

→ I wish ……………………………………………………………………

37. I'm sorry, I asked her to say like that

→ I wish ……………………………………………………………………………

38. I couldn't afford to buy the new car.

→ I wish ……………………………………………………………………………

39. I didn't have breakfast, so I feel very hungry now.

→ I wish ……………………………………………………………………………

40. It is a pity they didn't write the letter.

→ They wish …………………………………………………………………………

41. We bought the bicycle yesterday, but there are some wrong with it now.

→ I wish ……………………………………………………………………………

42. I regret having telling her about that matter.

→ I wish ……………………………………………………………………………

43. I regret not taking part in the social activity.

→ I wish ……………………………………………………………………………

44. We asked them to repeat what they had said, but they refused.

→ We wish ……………………………………………………………………………

45. If I were you, I would ask her to do this work.

→ I wish ……………………………………………………………………………

46. I can't watch the football match this afternoon.

→ I wish ……………………………………………………………………………

47. You look different. You have changed so much.

→ I wish ……………………………………………………………………………

48. There is no a taxi. We must walk to the school.

→ We wish ……………………………………………………………………………

49. We tried our best, but nothing was done.

→ We wish ……………………………………………………………………………

50. I like swimming, but I can't swim.

→ I wish ……………………………………………………………………………

51. The tree died because of the shortage of water.

→ I wish ……………………………………………………………………………

52. If only he hadn't invited me to his party.

→ I wish ....

53. I don't want to be a woman.

→ I wish ....

54. The sea is too cold for us to swim.

→ We wish ....

55. I would like to live in Da Lat City now.

→ I wish ....

56. We are very hungry, but the meal hasn't been ready yet.

→ We wish ....

57. I haven't got any letter from you for ages.

→ I wish ....

58. This book is too expensive for us to buy.

→ We wish ....

59. Why didn't you phone me?

→ I wish ....

60. She didn't send the letter.

→ She wishes ....

61. If only I were rich.

→ I wish ....

62. If I had been studious, I wouldn't have had bad marks.

→ I wish ....

63. Unless it rains now, we won't have water to use.

→ We wish ....

64. She advised me to go there immediately, but I didn't.

→ She wishes ....

65. Although we tried to open the door, we didn't succeed.

→ We wish ....

66. He speaks English badly.

→ He wishes ....

67. My application for the job was turned down because I am not good at English.

→ I wish ....

68. It's no use buying this garden.

→ I wish ....

69. There's no point persuading her to accept this letter.

→ I wish ....

ANSWER KEY

1. I wish I knew him.
2. I wish she were there.
3. I wish I had some pens.
4. I wish I didn't live in the city.
5. She wishes she had been visited last year by me.
6. She wishes she hadn't eaten too much.
7. I wish she loved me.
8. I wish the house hadn't been destroyed to build the park.
9. I wish I had brought a map.
10. I wish the heavy rain hadn't prevented from running.
11. I wish they had given me some books.
12. I wish I weren't busy now so that I can help you.
13. I wish you would write more carefully in the future.
14. I wish I could attend your class tomorrow.
15. They wish they had invited her to the party.
16. He wishes he hadn't failed the examination again.
17. I wish I knew her address so that I can tell you.
18. I wish it would rain tomorrow so that the air will be cool.
19. I wish I had arrived at the station on time to catch the train.
20. I wish she could be free tomorrow.
21. I wish you wouldn't be met by me because you are a liar.
22. I wish I were in Ha Noi Capital now.

23. I wish I could meet you tomorrow / I wish I wouldn't work all day tomorrow to meet you.

24. I wish it weren't hot because I hate hot weather.

25. I wish you didn't buy this shirt.

26. I wish I weren't ill because I have to work tomorrow.

27. I wish you hadn't got there.

28. Everybody wishes they didn't eat this food.

29. I wish I were rich to buy a more beautiful house.

30. I wish I knew your telephone number so that I could phone you.

31. I wish there were not too many cars in the city so that it isn't polluted.

32. I wish it weren't the smoke from the factory so that we won't suffer from the air pollution.

33. He wishes he could give up smoking.

34. I wish I had my house repaired.

35. I wish I had worn a warm coat so that I wouldn't have a flu.

36. I wish she had time for me.

37. I wish I hadn't asked her to say like that.

38. I wish I had bought the new car.

39. I wish I had had breakfast.

40. They wish they had written the letter.

41. I wish I hadn't bought the bicycle yesterday.

42. I wish I hadn't told her about that matter.

43. I wish I had taken part in the social activity.

44. We wish they had repeated what they had said.

45. I wish you hadn't asked her to do this work.

46. I wish I could watch the football match this afternoon.

47. I wish you hadn't changed so much. You look different.

48. We wish there were a taxi.

49. We wish something were done.

50. I wish I could swim.

51. I wish there weren't the shortage of water so that the tree couldn't die.

52. I wish he hadn't invited me to his party.

53. I wish I weren't a woman.
54. I wish the sea weren't cold so that we can swim.
55. I wish I lived in Da Lat now.
56. We wish the meal were ready because we are very hungry.
57. I wish I got some letters from you for ages.
58. We wish the book were cheap so that we can buy it.
59. I wish you had phoned me.
60. She wishes she had sent the letter.
61. I wish I were rich.
62. I wish I had study hard to get good marks.
63. We wish there were a rain now so that we can have water to use
64. She wishes I had gone there immediately.
65. We wish we had succeeded in opening the door.
66. He wishes he spoke English better.
67. I wish I were good at English so that my application for the job wasn't turned down.
68. I wish you hadn't bought this garden.
69. I wish you hadn't persuaded her to accept this letter.

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 7: ARTICLE (MẠO TỪ)

✳ Mạo từ là từ được dùng trước danh từ và thông báo cho chúng ta biết danh từ đó đề cập đến một đối tượng xác định hay không xác định.

✳ Trong Tiếng Anh, có 3 từ được gọi là mạo từ (article) và chúng được phân chia thành hai loại: Mạo từ xác định và mạo từ bất định.

***a. Mạo từ xác định* (Definite article) - The**

✳ Nguyên tắc chung:

- "The" được dùng trước danh từ chỉ người hay vật đã được xác định.

Ex: She is cleaning the room: Cô ta đang chùi căn phòng.

(Cả người nói lẫn người nghe đều biết đó là căn phòng nào.)

- "The" đứng trước tính từ để tạo thành danh từ mang ý nghĩa chung chung.

Ex: The poor can't rent this room.

Người nghèo không thể thuê căn phòng này.

- "The" đứng trước một danh từ để chỉ một biểu chúng (chỉ cả một loài).

Ex: She hates the ant.

Cô ta ghét Kiến.

("ant" ở đây không chỉ là một con kiến mà chỉ chung cho tất cả loài kiến.)

- "The" đứng trước tên sông, kênh, kênh đào, eo biển, thác nước và khu rừng.

Ex: The Nile: sông Nin; the Pacific Ocean:Thái Bình Dương)

- "The" đứng trước tên thư viện, viện bảo tàng, phòng triển lãm, rạp hát,....

Ex: The Huntington Library.

Thư viện Huntington.

- "The" đứng trước danh từ mang ý nghĩa duy nhất.

Ex: The sun: *Mặt trời*

- "The" luôn luôn đứng trước "same"

Ex: Two buildings are the same height.

Hai tòa nhà này có độ cao như nhau.

- Nếu danh từ không đếm được có một mệnh đề hay cụm từ miêu tả theo sau thì "the" được sử dụng trước danh từ không đếm được ấy.

Ex: The money that you gave me yesterday wasn't my refund.

Tiền mà hôm qua anh đưa cho tôi không phải là món tiền hoàn lại của tôi.

- Khi danh từ riêng được dùng làm từ bổ ngữ cho một danh từ khác thì" the" luôn luôn đứng trước danh từ ấy.

Ex: The European cultures. *Văn hóa Châu Âu.*

- Một danh từ có thể được xác định tức là mạo từ xác định "the" được dùng trước nó nhờ một cụm giới từ.

Ex: The road to Ha Noi.

Con đường dẫn đến Hà Nội

The Seafoods of Vietnam.

Các loại hải sản của Việt nam.

✱ Các trường hợp sau đây không được dùng "the":

- Tên lục địa, thành phố, quốc gia, tiểu bang, tỉnh, đường phố, bán đảo, quần đảo, vịnh, ngọn núi.

Ex: Japan, Africa,....

Nhưng: The North Pole: Bắc cực, The South Pole: Nam cực

+ Các nước có hình thức số nhiều hoặc được tạo thành bởi các tiểu bang hoặc có "of" theo sau thì chúng ta dùng "the"

Ex: The United States (Hoa Kỳ), The People's Republic of China (nước cộng hòa Nhân dân Trung Hoa)

+ Khi tên núi hay danh từ "mountains" ở dạng số nhiều thì chúng ta dùng "the"

Ex: The Marble Mountains: Ngũ Hành Sơn

- Tên trường đại học, nhà ga, sân bay, tiệm ăn, công sở, cung điện

Ex: Hue University: *Đại Học Huế*

Da Nang Airport: *Sân Bay Đà Nẵng*

- Các danh từ chỉ buổi trong ngày, ngày, tháng.

Ex: On Sunday: *vào ngày chủ nhật*;

October: *tháng 10*

Nhưng: in the morning; in the afternoon; in the evening

- Chúng ta không dùng "the" khi danh từ chỉ mùa đứng ngay sau "it is/it was"

Ex: It was late summer.

Đó là vào cuối mùa hạ.

b. Mạo từ bất định (Indefinite article): A/An

- A/An được dùng trước danh từ đếm được số ít:

Ex: a book: *1 quyển sách*

- An orange: *1 quả cam*

An được sử dụng trước một danh từ bắt đầu bằng một nguyên âm (u, e, o, a, i). **Nhưng**: a university, a one-eyed man, an hour
A được dùng trước một danh từ bắt đầu bằng một phụ âm.

- A/An được dùng trong các từ ngữ chỉ đơn vị đo lường.

Ex: A kilo of beef

Một ki lo thịt bò

- A/An được dùng với danh từ chỉ nghề nghiệp.

Ex: My father is a worker.

Bố tôi là một công nhân.

Nhưng khi đề cập đến chức vụ của ai đó, một tổ chức hay trong một cộng đồng người mà chức vụ ấy mang tính duy nhất thì ta không dùng a/an.

Ex: He was president of the club.

Ông ta là chủ tịch của câu lạc bộ.

✳ Chúng ta không được dùng a/an trước danh từ không đếm được và danh từ đếm được số nhiều.

BÀI TẬP

Hãy điền A, An, The hoặc dấu X vào các chỗ trống sau.

Exercise 1

1. She had been ill for ……………long time before she died.

2. I am going for ……………..walk.

3. She is ……………..most intelligent woman I have ever met.

4. At ……………..age of 15, he became famous.

5. ……………cup of coffee will make you better.

6. He opened his eyes just in time. He caught sight of …………….man. ……………man was slipping out of the room.

7. My wife bought me ……………..beautiful present for my birthday.

8. ……………..world was to be ……………great adventure for him. He knew very …………….little about ……………world.

9. Mr. Binh is ……….teacher of ……….English at ……….big school in Ho Chi Minh City.

10. She is ………………beautiful girl with ………………long hair.

Exercise 2

1. He is …………….honest man.

2. My father went to ……………..sea when he was 14.

3. When do you hope to go to ……………..university?

4. There is a strike at ……………..hospital.

5. He is ………….one – eye man.

6. There is ……………..onion left in the fridge.

7. This is ……………..useful method of learning English.

8. I've got ……………..uncle.

9. Your shoes are under………………..bed.

10. There is a splendid view of ………………Lake Geneva from his hotel.

(ĐẠI HỌC NGOẠI THƯƠNG HÀ NỘI 2000 – 2001)

Exercise 3

1. John's father is ………engineer. He works eight hours…………..day. He starts ……………work at eight and goes……………home at 5.

2. …….water is……healthiest drink in ………most part of ……..world.

3. ………………spring in ………………north can be cold except for ………………few days when ………………sun is shining.

4. Take ………………first turning on ………………left and you can see ………………small house opposite ………………church.

5. ……………..man who lives in ……………flat next ……………door is ……………..artist.

(ĐẠI HỌC NGOẠI THƯƠNG HÀ NỘI)

Exercise 4

1. ………………first man to land on ……………..moon said: "This is ………………..small step for ………………man, but giant step for mankind."

2. They had ………………best holiday they had ever had by ………………..lake in ……………..area near………………United States.

3. One of my friends advised me to take ……………taxi, another told me to walk ………………home for ………………change.

4. "Take ………………seat. I have told you………………hundred times not to come into ………………room with ………………hat on."

5. Didn't you watch ……………….television program about ……………weather? Take ……………..raincoat with you in ……………..case it rains.

(ĐẠI HỌC NGOẠI THƯƠNG TPHCM 1998 – 1999)

Exercise 5

1. It's very cold. My father, who has been ill since last week is walking along ………………road without ………………coat. He should have worn ………………warm coat.

2. Have you ever seen ………………film? It's really interesting.

3. ………………tourist guide who took us from the rail station to ………………hotel was very polite.

4. They said that they had seen me working at ………………library the day before.

5. ………………man who she is speaking to is ……………..nurse.

6. Samuel Clemens was born in ………………..small town on ………………Missouri river in ………………USA.

7. When Samuel was twelve, his father died and ………………boy began to work and learned ……………profession of ………………printer.

8. According to ……………..passage, ………………important part of our life is money.

9. I have worked at ………………museum since I left for Hue City.

10. Do you like playing ……………..baseball?

Exercise 6

1. I will remember to give him ………………..message.

2. She was so worried about ………………test that she didn't sleep well. She was very tired after …………......sleepless night.

3. Did she give you ……………lift this morning?

4. I don't like ………………weather in ………………country. It's too hot in ………………summer and too cold in ………………winter.

5. ………………Prime Minister has travelled to America and France since last week.

6. ………………..Statue of Liberty was ………………..gift of friendship from France to ……………….United States.

7. It usually takes me half ………………..hour to get there.

8. He was in charge of …….…………..large number of men.

9. ……………….man who answered ………………..phone told me you were here yesterday.

10. ……………….smoke that comes from ……………….lit cigarette contains many different poisonous chemicals.

Exercise 7

1. I am ……………….first year student. By ……………….end of next year, I will have learned English for two years.

2. ……………….costwolds is an area of great beauty in England. It has ………………….number of delightful villages and small towns with lovely old buildings that have remained unchanged since ………………area was ………………..major commercial centre several centuries ago.

3. ……………….Lake Erie is one of ……………….five Great Lakes in ………………….North America.

4. ………………….friend of mine is going to ……………….New York City to visit me next ………………….summer.

5. I'm going to buy ………………….new pair of shoes next week.

6. In ……………….few minutes's time, when ……………..clock strike eight, I will be standing here.

7. Skiing has become ………………..way of life, for many people. From …………moment……………first snowflake falls until …………spring thaw, skiers put their skis on their cars and head for ……………slopes.

8. Yesterday our class visited ……………….museum of natural history. It was interesting and we learned quite ……………..lot. First, we visited ………………..exhibits on ……………….ground floor.

9. On …………………..way to ………………….France, we break in England.

10. We raise the fund for ……………..poor.

Exercise 8

1. One of ……………….disadvantages of this house is that it has no garden.

2. Most of ………………workers working in ………………yard are tired.

3. If you go to ………………..market, please buy …………………bottle of ………………chocolate milk and ………………dozen eggs.

4. ………………..number of students in my class is fifty.

5. My uncle made ………………speech last week. ………………speech was wonderful.

6. ………policeman asked ………man to tell ……………..truth.

7. …………...flood was over almost as soon as it started, ……….reports said.

8. She was …………………last person that I met.

9. Most ………………..students answering your questions are good at English.

10. ………………Civil War was fought in ………………United States.

Exercise 9

1. When we got to ………………bus – stop, ……………..bus had left.

2. ………………..front type of my motorbike burst as I was driving along ………………..main road.

3. ……………..train will be leaving in ………………ten minutes so you'd better hurry up.

4. On …………way to your hometown there is …………beautiful wood.

5. ………………..group called "Friends of ……………..Earth" is concerned about ………………conservation of ……………..natural environment.

6. I'm going to ....place where I met you yesterday.

7. Please take ....first turning on ....right.

8. Despite ....fact that he doesn't like living in Hue, he sometimes visits ....city.

9. Is this ....best hotel you could find?

10. Traveling in ....aeroplane for ....first time was......................memorable experience.

Exercise 10

1. Around ....age of sixteen, you must make one of ....biggest decisions of your life.

2. As we know, scientists sent ....expedition to ....Mars during ....1990s.

3. Everyone thinks of ....president of ....USA as ....most powerful man in ....Western wold.

4. Has there ....complaint about ....goods we delivered last week?

5. ....train I got on to go to ....next station didn't stop there.

6. ....couple found ....lonely hill overlooking ....ocean.

7. ....table tennis match was very enjoyable before someone lit a cigarette and ruined ....evening.

8. I took ....examination in ....computer theory two weeks ago.

9. As ....result, it is becoming extremely difficult to grow enough to feed.......................world's rapidly increasing population.

10. It's high time we did something to stop ....road accidents.

ANSWER KEY

Exercise 1

1. a 2. a 3. the 4. the 5. A
6. a – The 7. a 8. The – a – X – the 9. a – x – a
10. a – x

Exercise 2

1. an 2. x 3. x 4. the 5. a
6. an 7. a 8. an 9. the 10. x

Exercise 3

1. an – a – x – x 2. x – the – x – the
3. x – the – a – the 4. the – the – a – the
5. The – the – x – an

Exercise 4

1. The – the – a – a 2. the – a – an – the
3. a – x – a 4. a – a – the – a
5. the – the – a – x

Exercise 5

1. the – a – a 2. the 3. The – the 4. the
5. The – a 6. a – the – the 7. the – the – a
8. the – an 9. the 10. x

Exercise 6

1. the 2. the – a 3. a 4. the – the – the – the
5. The 6. The – a – the 7. an 8. a
9. The – the 10. The – a

Exercise 7

1. a – the 2. The – a – the – a 3. x – the – x
4. A – x – x 5. a 6. a – the
7. a – the – the – the – the 8. the – a – the – the
9. the – x 10. the

Exercise 8

1. the   2. the – the   3. the – a – x – a   4. The

5. a – The   6. The – the – the   7. The – the   8. the   9. x

10. The – the

Exercise 9

1. the – the   2. The – the   3. The – x   4. the – a

5. The – the – the – the   6. the   7. the – the   8. the – the

9. the   10. an – the – a

Exercise 10

1. the – the   2. an - x – the   3. the – the – the – the

4. a – the   5. The – the   6. The – a – the   7. The – the

8. an – x   9. a – the   10. x

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 8: FULL INFINITIVE; GERUND; BARE INFINITIVE

BẢNG THỐNG KÊ CÁC ĐỘNG TỪ THEO SAU CHÚNG LÀ DẠNG TO- INFINITIVE (V + V- to infinitive)

agree   threaten   demand   tend   swear   promise
arrange   decide   need   desire   choose   continue
expect   forget   fail   ask   begin   hesitate
neglect   learn   love   mean   hope   determine
offer   refuse   start   prepare   try   want
wish   seem   plan   prefer   pretend   mean
manage   attempt   claim   intend   strive   propose

Ex: I managed to open the door last night.

BẢNG THỐNG KÊ CÁC ĐỘNG TỪ THEO SAU CHÚNG LÀ DẠNG V + O + TO- INFINITIVE

advise   allow   beg   force   imagine
encourage   permit   consider   forbid   command
get   assume   lead   ask   tell
prefer   challenge   order   mean   observe
guess   persuade   love   invite   intend

compel expect suspect urge want
wish tempt cause trust warn
enable

Ex: I ordered you to keep silent.

BẢNG THỐNG KÊ CÁC ĐỘNG TỪ THEO SAU CHÚNG LÀ DẠNG V + V-ing

admit finish avoid appreciate begin delay
deny enjoy escape mention prefer practise
quit risk mind postpone miss recall
resist resume suggest report recollect hate

Ex: I enjoy playing football.

MỘT SỐ DIỄN NGỮ THEO SAU CHÚNG LUÔN LÀ V-ing (V + V-ing)

it is no use it is worth it is worthless
there is no point can't bear can't help
feel like can't stand can't face

MỘT SỐ ĐỘNG TỪ THEO SAU CHÚNG CÓ THỂ LÀ V- to infinitive hoặc là V- ing, tùy vào văn cảnh của câu:

regret, forget, remember khi chúng được dùng với **V- to infinitive** thì chỉ hành động chưa diễn ra và khi chúng được dùng với **V- ing** thì chỉ hành động đã qua.

Ex: I will remember to pick you up at the airport.

(Tôi sẽ đón anh tại sân bay.)

Ex: I remember being taken to the zoo by my father.

(Tôi nhớ bố tôi đã dẫn tôi đến sở thú này rồi.)

stop + V- to infinitive: dừng lại để làm việc gì

Ex: We stopped our car to buy a present.

(Chúng tôi dừng xe hơi lại để mua một món quà.)

stop + V- ing: dừng làm việc gì

Ex: We stopped working because of the heavy rain.

(Chúng tôi ngừng làm việc vì trời mưa to.)

try + V- to infinitive: cố gắng để làm gì

Ex: I tried to give up smoking.

(Tôi đã cố gắng bỏ hút thuốc.)

try + V- ing: thử xem, thí nghiệm

Ex: I tried wearing the pair of shoes.

(Tôi đã mang thử đôi giày đó.)

MỘT SỐ ĐỘNG TỪ THEO SAU CHÚNG LÀ TÂN NGỮ THÌ DÙNG TO INFINITIVE CÒN NẾU KHÔNG CÓ TÂN NGỮ THEO SAU THÌ DÙNG V-ING

allow, recommend, permit…

MỘT SỐ ĐỘNG TỪ THEO SAU CHÚNG LÀ TÂN NGỮ THÌ DÙNG

BARE INFINITIVE (V + O + V- bare infinitive)

let, make

Các động từ chỉ giác quan như: see, hear, watch, feel, …khi chúng diễn tả sự hoàn tất của hành động thì chúng ta dùng động từ nguyên mẫu không TO ngay sau chúng. Nhưng nếu chúng diễn tả hành động đang diễn ra thì chúng ta dùng V-ing ngay sau chúng.

Ex: I hear she sing.

I see him standing here.

BÀI TẬP

EXERCISE 1

*** Hãy sử dụng dạng to – infinitive hoặc Gerund hoặc bare – infinitive cho mỗi chỗ trống sau.**

Ex: Collecting stamps is my hobby.

She refused to answer my questions.

1. I invited Mrs. Thao (go) for coffee with me but she refused (accept) my invitation.
2. I don't know why they delayed (build) the house until the next week.
3. I used (swim) well when I was a little boy.
4. The fishmen's children are used to (live) on the river.
5. They earn money by (work) hard all day and all night.
6. She promised (take) me to Vi Da Xua Coffee bar but she broke her words.
7. I don't mind (lend) you my book if you use it carefully.
8. I would like (invite) you (answer) this question.
9. They like (go) fishing with me.
10. It's worth (read) the book. It helps you widen your knowledge.

EXERCISE 2

1. She asked me (translate) this song into Vietnamese.
2. Would you mind (move) the vase to another place?
3. There is no point (paint) the wall. They will leave for Da Nang City next week.
4. We stopped (work) because it rained heavily.
5. Well ....well..........I stopped my car (see) what happened.
6. I regret (tell) you that your application was refused.
7. They regretted (give) her the message because it made her sad.
8. Don't worry. I'll remember (send) her the letter.
9. - Excuse me!
   - Yes?
   - Are you Minh? I remember (meet) you somewhere before.
10. I didn't know how (use) the machine.

EXERCISE 3

1. It took us six hours (prepare) the party.

2 – 3. We all enjoy (learn) (write) English correctly.

4. (Speak) English fluently isn't easy.
5. We are looking forward to (see) you next month.
6. I remember (lock) the door before going to bed.
7. They hoped (finish) (paint) the room the week before.
8. We offered (show) you how (speak) English correctly.
9. It's very hot. I suggested (go) swimming.
10. They advised me (give) up (smoke).

EXERCISE 4

1. They avoided (wait) for Mr. John.
2. We would appreciate (see) you as soon as possible.
3. How long have you practiced (speak) English?
4. Tom denied (steal) my car.
5. We failed (make) our own decision.
6. We'll need (buy) a larger house.
7. Your car is dirty. It needs (wash).
8. Have you ever considered (go) abroad?

9. She sometimes expects (have) a building.

10. She refused (tell) about the story.

EXERCISE 5

1. They didn't hesitate (complain) to him about his decision.

2. Would you mind (wait) him a moment?

3. We can't stand (read) his letters.

4. We can't help (provide) them with food.

5. Did they agree (pay) for the damage?

6. It is no use (listen) to the music.

7. Lan and Tam don't plan (go) on a picnic.

8. Don't you recall (see) my briefcase?

9. I hate (eat) the kind of food but ....

10. You shouldn't postpone (leave) for Ho Chi Minh City to work.

EXERCISE 6

1. They admitted (see) him climb over the wall.

2. Don't risk (lend) him the amount of the money.

3. The problem really needs (consider) carefully.

4. They don't dare (suggest) that possibility to you, do they?

5. We hoped (find) a better hotel for them.

6. They claim (be) experts on the project.

7. They never neglect (take) care of their grandparents.

8. The robber threatened (kill) the woman because she didn't give him the ring.

9. I prefer (read) books to (watch) TV.

10. She sometimes pretends (not see) me.

EXERCISE 7

1. We missed (attend) Mr. Tam's speech last week.

2. They continued (drive) fast in spite of my disagreement.

3. She encouraged me (take) part in the games.

4. He demanded (have) the message immediately.

5. They wish (reveal) the plans to her, don't they?

6. They seem (know) a lot about the project.

7. The policeman ordered her (stop) her car immediately.

8. My parents never allow me (go) out at night.
9. We don't intend (tell) him about my family.
10. We expected (receive) the confirmation from the hotel.

EXERCISE 8

1. It's worthless (buy) the second hand car.
2. It's impossible for me (do) that work without your help.
3. He didn't remind me (lock) the door before going out.
4. Your examples are quite difficult (understand).
5. It isn't difficult (learn) (drive) a car.
6. Although she was ill yesterday, she tried (go) to school.
7. May I see the shirt, Madam? Yes, of course, you can try (wear) it.
8. I forgot (ask) him about it.
9. I won't forget (buy) you a present when I return from my vacation.
10. They arrange (visit) me again this afternoon.

EXERCISE 9

1. Oh, where's my pen? I remember (bring) it.
2. I can't persuade him (give up) the present job.
3. They urged him (continue) his education in America.
4. My mother forced me (drink) milk.
5. I am getting used to (eat) Chinese food.
6. She has lived in England for 5 years, so she is used to (drive) on the left.
7. She advised me (help) the poor.
8. I prefer (prepare) the dinner.
9. I suggested (travel) to Ho Chi Minh City by air.
10. He begged me (do) him a favour.

EXERCISE 10

1. I suggest she (make) a contribution to building the country.
2. You had better (study) English before going to England to work.
3. (Speak) English more fluently, you must practice (speak) it every day.
4. They swear not (make) the mistake again.
5. We managed (open) the door. She locked it carefully.
6. They determined (pass) the exam.
7. You should quit (smoke).

8. We don't mind (help) you this work.

9. (Write) the composition in English is so difficult.

10. We decided (go) on a picnic in Da Lat.

ANSWER KEY

EXERCISE 1

1. to go – to accept   2. building   3. to swim
4. living   5. working   6. to take
7. lending   8. to invite – to answer   9. going
10. reading

EXERCISE 2

1. to translate   2. moving   3. painting   4. working
5. to stop   6. to tell   7. giving   8. to send
9. meeting   10. to use

EXERCISE 3

1. to prepare   2 – 3. learning – to write   4. speaking
5. seeing   6. locking   7. to finish – painting
8. to show – to speak   9. going   10. to give up – smoking

EXERCISE 4

1. waiting   2. seeing   3. speaking
4. stealing   5. to make   6. to buy
7. washing   8. going   9. to have
10. to tell

EXERCISE 5

1. to complain   2. waiting   3. reading
4. providing   5. to pay   6. listening
7. to go   8. seeing   9. eating
10. leaving

EXERCISE 6

1. seeing   2. lending   3. considering
4. to suggest   5. to find   6. to be
7. to take   8. to kill   9. reading – watching
10. not to see

EXERCISE 7

1. buying
2. to do
3. locking
4. to understand
5. to learn – to drive
6. to go
7. wearing
8. asking
9. to buy
10. to visit

EXERCISE 8

1. bringing
2. to give up
3. to continue
4. to drink
5. eating
6. driving
7. to help
8. to prepare
9. traveling
10. to do

EXERCISE 10

1. make
2. study
3. to speak – speaking
4. to make
5. to open
6. to pass
7. smoking
8. helping
9. writing
10. to go

CHUYÊN ĐỀ 9: ADVERBIAL CLAUSES (Mệnh đề trạng ngữ)

1. Adverbial clauses of place *(Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ nơi chốn)*

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ nơi chốn được bắt đầu bằng Where (nơi mà) và Wherever (bất cứ nơi nào)

Ex: She will go where you tell her.

Cô ta sẽ đi nơi mà bạn bảo cô ta.

You can go wherever you like.

Bạn có thể đi bất cứ nơi nào mà bạn thích.

✳ Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ nơi chốn có chức năng của một phó từ

2. Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ sự tương phản *(Adverb clause of concession)*

a. Although/Even though/Though: Mặc dù, cho dù

Although/Even though/Though + clause

Ex: Although he was ill, he wasn't absent from school.

(Mặc dù anh ấy bị ốm nhưng anh ấy vẫn không nghỉ học.)

Although/Though/Even though được dùng để chỉ sự tương phản. Chúng ta không được dùng Although/Though/Even though và But trong cùng một lúc. Đây là một lỗi sai thường xuất hiện trong các bài làm của các em học sinh có thói quen bám vào Tiếng Việt để dịch trong quá trình làm bài.

Ex: Although it rained heavily, but they arrived at the airport on time.

(Mặc dù trời mưa to nhưng họ vẫn đến sân bay đúng giờ.)

(incorrect)

Although it rained heavily, they arrived at the airport on time.

(Mặc dù trời mưa to nhưng họ vẫn đến sân bay đúng giờ.)

(correct)

b. No matter: Cho dù, có ý nghĩa tương tự như Although/Though/Even though. Theo sau nó là how, what, who, where

no matter how = however	no matter who = whoever
no matter what = whatever	no matter where = wherever

Ex: No matter what you say, I won't believe in that story.

= Whatever you say, I won't believe in that story.

(Dù anh nói gì đi nữa, tôi vẫn không tin vào câu chuyện đó.)

c. Ngoài ra chúng ta còn dùng Despite và In spite of (Mặc dù) để diễn đạt sự tương phản.

In spite of + V- ing/ Noun

Ex: In spite of the interesting film, she felt sleepy.

(Mặc dù bộ phim đó hay nhưng cô ấy vẫn cảm thấy buồn ngủ.)

✱ Sau Despite có hai cách dùng:

Despite + N/V-ing

Ex: Despite the bad weather, they continued to play football.

(Mặc dù thời tiết xấu nhưng họ vẫn tiếp tục chơi bóng đá.)

Despite the fact that + clause

Ex: Despite the fact that they played well, they didn't win the game.

(Mặc dù (sự thật) họ chơi hay nhưng họ vẫn không thắng trong trò chơi đó.)

3. Adverbial clauses and phrases of reason *(Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ lý do và cụm từ chỉ lý do)*

+ Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ lý do thường bắt đầu bằng:

Because/Since/As/Seeing that + clause: Vì

Ex: Because it rained, we stayed at home.

(Vì trời mưa nên chúng tôi ở nhà.)

✳ Chú ý

Chúng ta cần tránh các lỗi sai sau:

Because it rained, ***so*** we stayed at home. (Incorrect)

(Vì trời mưa nên chúng tôi đã ở nhà. (Sai))

Because it rained, we stayed at home. (Correct)

(Vì trời mưa nên chúng tôi ở nhà. (Đúng))

Ở ví dụ thứ nhất, chúng ta dùng tới hai liên từ chỉ nguyên nhân-kết quả. Chúng ta không có cách dùng như vậy trong Tiếng Anh mặc dù Tiếng Việt vẫn thường dùng lối nói như thế.

+ Cụm từ chỉ lý do- Because of

Because of + N/V- ing

4. Adverbial clauses of purpose (*Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ mục đích)*

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ mục đích được bắt đầu bằng:

So that = in order that: Cốt để, để mà

So that/In order that + S + may/might/shall/should/can/could/ will/would + V- bare infinitive

Ex: He studies hard so that he can pass the examination.

(Anh ta học hành chăm chỉ cốt để vượt qua kì thi.)

They started the journey early in order that they would get there on time.

(Họ khởi hành cuộc hành trình sớm cốt để đến đó đúng giờ.)

5. Adverbial phrases of purpose *(Cụm phó từ chỉ mục đích)*

Cụm phó từ chỉ mục đích thường được bắt đầu bằng:

So as to = in order to = to: Để mà, cốt để

So as to = in order to = to + V- bare infinitive

Ex: She went to the bookstore to buy some books.

(Cô ta đã đến hiệu sách để mua một vài quyển sách.)

We kept silent in order to see the film.

(Chúng tôi đã giữ yên lặng để xem bộ phim đó.)

6. Adverbial clauses of the time *(Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian)*

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian thường được bắt đầu bằng:

When: Khi

Ex: When he came, I had gone out.

(Khi anh ta đến thì tôi đã đi rồi.)

After: Sau khi

Ex: After he had had breakfast, he went to school.

(Sau khi ăn sáng xong thì cậu ấy đi học.)

Before: Trước khi

Ex: I'll study English before I fly to England.

(Tôi học Tiếng Anh trước khi tôi bay sang nước Anh.)

While: Trong khi

Ex: While they were watching TV, the telephone rang.

(Trong khi họ đang xem phim thì chuông điện thoại reo.)

Till/Untill: Cho đến khi

Ex: Don't leave here untill I come back.

(Đừng rời chỗ này cho tới khi tôi quay lại.)

As soon as: Ngay khi

Ex: I will call you as soon as I arrive at the place.

(Tôi sẽ gọi cho bạn ngay khi tôi đến nơi đó.)

Since: Từ khi

Ex: We haven't seen her since we left for Ha Noi Capital.

(Chúng tôi không gặp cô ấy kể từ khi chúng tôi chuyển đến thủ đô Hà Nội.)

Whenever: Bất cứ lúc nào

Ex: You can use my computer whenever you like.

(Bạn có thể dùng máy tính của tôi bất cứ lúc nào bạn thích.)

Just as: Ngay khi

Ex: She turned the light off just as she entered the room.

(Cô ta tắt đèn ngay khi cô ta bước vào căn phòng.)

✳ **Chú ý:** ***Chúng ta không được sử dụng thì tương lai trong mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian.***

Ex: When it will rain, I usually stay at home. (Incorrect)

When it rains, I usually stay at home. (Correct)

7. Adverbial clauses of manner with As and As if *(*Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thể cách As và As if)

As: Như là

Ex: They acted as she was asked.

(Họ đã hành động như cô ta được yêu cầu.)

As if: Như thể là

- Diễn tả việc người nói tin có thể xảy ra ở hiện tại hoặc trong tương lai (dùng với các thì hiện tại hoặc tương lai)

Ex: It looks as if it's going to rain.

(Trông như trời sắp mưa.)

- Diễn tả việc người nói tin là khó hoặc không có thật ở hiện tại (dùng với thì quá khứ đơn hoặc với were)

Ex: He said as if he were my father.

(Anh ta nói trông như thể anh ta là bố của tôi.)

- Diễn tả việc người nói tin là khó hoặc không có thật ở trong quá khứ (dùng thì quá khứ hoàn thành)

Ex: He looks as if he had known what happened.

(Trông như thể anh ta đã biết điều gì đã xảy ra.)

8. Adverbial clauses (review): ***Mệnh đề trạng ngữ (ôn lại)***

+ Adverbial clauses of purpose: Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ mục đích

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ mục đích được bắt đầu bằng:

So that/In order that/In case + clause

Ex: They listen to music so that they can avoid stress.

+ Adverbial clauses of reason: Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ nguyên nhân

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ nguyên nhân bắt đầu bằng:

Because/As/Since + clause

Ex: Because I went to bed late last night, I feel tired now.

+ Adverbial clauses of time: Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian được bắt đầu bằng:

When/ While/ Before/ After/ Since/ As/ Till/ Untill/ As soon as/ Whenever/ Just as + clause

Ex: I have worked for that company *since* **I moved to the city.**

+ Adverbial clauses of mannar: Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thể cách

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ thể cách được bắt đầu bằng:

As/ As if + clause

Ex: He looks at me *as if* **I were mad.**

+ Adverbial clauses of result: Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ kết quả

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ kết quả được bắt đầu bằng:

So + adj/ adv + that + clause
Such + noun + that + clause

Ex: He speaks so slowly that I get bored.

+ Adverbial clauses of concession: Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ sự tương phản

Mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ sự tương phản được bắt đầu bằng:

Though/ Although/ No matter how/ No matter what/ No matter where/ No matter who/ As + clause

Ex: No matter what I do, they do not accept me.

BÀI TẬP

Hãy viết lại các câu sau , sử dụng những gợi ý trong ngoặc đơn.

EXERCISE 1

1. It rained very heavily. I couldn't drive faster. (so ………..that)

→……………………………………………………………………………...

2. The stone is very heavy. I can't move it to the place. (such ……….that)

→……………………………………………………………………………...

3. He spoke too fast, so I couldn't hear anything. (so ……….that)

→……………………………………………………………………………...

4. She is very intelligent. She answered the difficult question very well. (so ………..that)

→……………………………………………………………………………..

5. There are too many things to do, so you can't go out now. (because)

→……………………………………………………………………………..

6. It was so dark that we couldn't see anything. (too ………to)

→……………………………………………………………………………..

7. He had an accident because he drove carelessly. (so ……….that)

→……………………………………………………………………………..

8. She didn't hurry, so she missed the last train. (too ………..to)

→……………………………………………………………………………..

9. If she had had enough money, she could have bought the book. (enough ………to)

→……………………………………………………………………………..

10. It's high time you took a short rest. (enough ………to)

→……………………………………………………………………………..

EXERCISE 2

1. The weather was bad. They went camping. (although)

→……………………………………………………………………………..

2. It was very noisy. We could listen to the speech. (although)

→……………………………………………………………………………..

3. He is poor. He is always honest. (Although)

→……………………………………………………………………………..

4. We are not good at English. We can work with the men. (although)

→……………………………………………………………………………..

5. I and Mr. Trang have been friends for 10 months. Our relationship is very good. (although)

→……………………………………………………………………………..

6. We start early. We don't want to miss the bus. (so that)

→……………………………………………………………………………..

7. Mr. Fox was ill. He had to stay at home. (since)

→……………………………………………………………………………..

8. If I don't travel to Ha Noi Capital by air, I will be late for the important meeting. (so that)

→...

9. The film was very interesting. I didn't want to go home early. (such ....that)

→...

10. The man spoke too rapidly for me to understand. (so ....that)

→...

EXERCISE 3

1. They study hard. They want to pass the exam easily. (so as to)

→...

2. I often forget things, my wife usually gives me a list. (since)

→...

3. He worked hard all day and all night. He wanted to earn much money. (so that)

→...

4. I borrowed the car from my friend. I could get there in time. (so that)

→...

5. If you don't want to be late for the dinner, you should leave for home right now. (so that)

→...

6. Because you weren't at home, I called you at your office. (so)

→...

7. The homework is so difficult that I need your help. (such ....that)

→...

8. Since I didn't understand the explanation, I had to ask for some help. (so)

→...

9. We stopped to look at the house because it is very nice. (so ....that)

→...

10. There was much food. We ate too much. (so ....that)

→...

EXERCISE 4

1. Despite the slippery roads, he drove his car carelessly. (although)

→……………………………………………………………………………

2. The streets in the city are narrow. They drive car. (in spite of)

→……………………………………………………………………………

3. In spite of my free time, I seldom go to the movies. (although)

→……………………………………………………………………………

4. Despite the high cost of living here, people usually go shopping. (Although)

→……………………………………………………………………………

5. We could finish our duty without your help. (although)

→……………………………………………………………………………

6. He went to work yesterday despite his bad cold. (although)

→……………………………………………………………………………

7. The coffee was so strong that I couldn't drink it. (such ……..that)

→……………………………………………………………………………

8. The lesson was so long that I couldn't read it as soon as possible. (too …..to)

→……………………………………………………………………………

9. We had to take a taxi so that we could be there in time. (in order to)

→……………………………………………………………………………

10. Because his disease is dangerous, they are sending him to the hospital. (Because of)

→……………………………………………………………………………

ANSWER KEY

EXERCISE 1

1. It rained so heavily that I couldn't drive faster.
2. It is such a heavy stone that I can't move it to the place.
3. He spoke so fast that I couldn't hear anything.
4. She is so intelligent that she answered the difficult question very well.
5. You can't go out now because there are too many things to do.
6. It was too dark for us too see everything.

7. He drove so carelessly that he had an accident.

8. She was too late to catch the last train.

9. She didn't have enough money to buy the book.

10. You are tired enough to take a short rest.

EXERCISE 2

1. Although the weather was bad, they went camping.

2. Although it was very noisy, we could listen to the speech.

3. Although he is poor, he is always honest.

4. Although we are not good at English, we can work with the men.

5. Although I and Ms. Trang have been friends for 10 months, our relationship is very good.

6. We start early so that we won't miss the bus.

7. Since Mr. Fox was ill, he had to stay at home.

8. I travel to Ha Noi Capital by air so that I won't be late for the important meeting.

9. It was such an interesting film that I didn't want to go home early.

10. The man spoke so rapidly that I couldn't understand him.

EXERCISE 3

1. They study hard so as to pass the exam easily.

2. Since I forget things, my wife usually gives me a list.

3. He worked hard all day and all night so that he could earn much money.

4. I borrowed the car from my friend so that I could get there in time.

5. You should leave for home right now so that you won't be late for the dinner.

6. You weren't at home, so I called you at your office.

7. It is such difficult homework that I need your help.

8. I didn't understand the explanation, so I had to ask for sone help.

9. The house is so nice that we stopped to look at it.

10. There was so much food that we ate too much.

EXERCISE 4

1. Although the roads were slippery, he drove his care carelessly.

2. In spite of the narrow streets in the city, they drive cars.

3. I seldom go to the movies although I have free time.

4. Although the cost of living here is high, people usually go shopping.

5. Although you didn't help us, we could finish our duty.

6. He went to work yesterday although his car was bad.

7. It was such strong coffee that I couldn't drink it.

8. The lesson was too long for me to read as soon as possible.

9. We had to take a taxi in order to be there in time.

10. Because of his dangerous disease, they are sending him to the hospital.

CÁC CẤU TRÚC KHÁC CẦN PHẢI GHI NHỚ

1. have/ get + something + V-3/ed: có cái gì đó được làm.

2. have + someone + V- bare infinitive: nhờ ai đó làm việc gì.

3. something + need + V-ing: cái gì cần được làm. (mang nghĩa bị động)

4. had better + V- bare infinitive: tốt hơn hết nên làm gì.

5. S + would rather + V- bare infinitive + than + V- bare infinitive: thích cái gì hơn cái gì.

6. S1 + would rather + S2 + simple past + (than + simple past).

7. S + suggest + V-ing: ai đó đề nghị làm việc gì. (người nói có tham gia hành động)

8. S1 + suggest + S2 + (should) + V- bare infinitive: ai đó đề nghị người nào đó làm điều gì.

9. should + have + V-3/ed: lẽ ra ……

10. S1 + had + no sooner + V-3/ed + than + S2 + V-2/ed

11. S1 + had + hardly + V- 3/ed + when +S2 + V-2/ed

12. S1 + neither + nor + **S2 + V2**

13. S1 + either + or + **S2 + V2**

14. Every (+ danh từ số ít, every one, everything), some (+ danh từ số ít, some one, something), all + động từ số ít

Nhưng: all + danh từ số nhiều + động từ số nhiều

Ex: All the people have made their own decision.

15. A number of + danh từ số nhiều + động từ số nhiều

The number of + danh từ số nhiều + động từ số ít

Ex: A number of students were absent.

The number of students in the class is forty.

16. Any of, either of, neither of và none of

Khi một danh từ số nhiều đứng sau **any of, either of, neither of, none of,** chúng ta có thể dùng **động từ số ít** hoặc số **nhiều**.

17. Khi hai chủ từ nối với nhau bằng: .....**with**.....; ......**together with**.....;......**along with**.......; ....**as well as**.......; thì động từ chia theo chủ từ đứng trước.

Ex: Mai together with you is often late for the bus.

18. Khi hai chủ từ nối nhau bằng: **both ....and**......; **both of + danh từ số nhiều, thì động từ được chia ở số nhiều.**

Ex: I have two brothers. Both of them are good at English.

19. Hai chủ từ nối với nhau bằng **not only .....but also** .....**thì động từ chia theo chủ từ đứng sau.**

Ex: Not only Mr.Minh but also his children enjoy listening to music.

ĐẢO NGỮ

Khi các từ như: **no sooner, hardly, scarely, seldom, never, only, not only, not until... đứng đầu câu** thì hiện tượng **đảo ngữ xảy ra.**

Ex: Seldom does she eat chicken.

MAKE AND DO *(Make và Do)*

✳ ***Make*** và ***Do*** có nghĩa giống nhau nhưng ý nghĩa của chúng lại khác nhau. Vậy ***Make*** và ***Do***, chúng khác nhau cơ bản ở những điểm nào?

+ ***Make*** - mang ý nghĩa là tạo nên mới cái gì. Thêm vào đó, ***Make*** thường đứng trước những bổ ngữ có nguồn gốc từ động từ.

Ex: Make a decision (to decide: quyết định)

+ ***Do*** - mang ý nghĩa là vận dụng hay thao tác vào cái gì đó có sẵn. Thêm vào đó, ***Do*** thường đứng trước những bổ ngữ chỉ về công việc.

Ex: Do homework: *làm bài tập về nhà.*

✳ Một số diễn ngữ đi cùng Do

do a good job
do something/anything/nothing
do work
do the dishes
do a paper
do the laundry
do crossword puzzles
do homework
do a favour
do an assignment
do research
do housework

Expressions with Make *(Các diễn ngữ được tạo thành từ "Make")*

make the bed
make possible for
make a mistake
make a phone call
make an offer
make an application

make the team
make an appointment
make a profit
make an impression
make a complaint
make preparation
make a cancellation
make a quarrel
make noise
make a cake
make some coffee
make a decision
make a promise
make attempt
make a discovery
make a list
make a choice
make an effort
make a request
make a loss
make arrangements
make a concession
make progress
make a speech
make sentence
make money
make an announcement
make a list
make friends
make agreement
make sure
make a cake

BRING AND TAKE

Sự khác nhau về mặt ngữ nghĩa của Bring và Take

✳ **Bring** và **Take** có nghĩa là "**mang lại**", tuy nhiên chúng được dùng trong mỗi trường hợp khác nhau. Chúng ta xét hai ví dụ sau:

Ex1: If I go to the library, I will bring you an English-Vietnamese dictionary.

(Nếu tôi đến thư phòng thì tôi sẽ mang cho bạn một quyển từ điển Anh-Việt) (quyển sách từ điển được để tại thư phòng)

Ex2: Take this cup of coffee to him.

(Mang tách cà phê này cho anh ta.)

+ **Nhận xét:** Trong ví dụ 1, chúng ta thấy rằng" Nếu tôi đến thư phòng (quyển từ điển đang được đặt tại thư phòng) thì tôi sẽ mang cho bạn quyển từ điển Anh-Việt". Như vậy, quyển sách từ điển sẽ được mang **từ thư phòng *đến* cho bạn**. Trong ví dụ 2, chúng ta thấy rằng "Mang tách cà phê này cho anh ta". Như vậy, tách cà phê này sẽ được mang **từ đây *đến* cho anh ta**.

✳ **Kết luận:**

Bring có nghĩa là mang cái gì từ đâu đến nơi này.

Take có nghĩa là mang cái gì từ nơi đây tới nơi khác.

* Phrasal verbs with Take *(Cụm động từ với Take)*

take after	: *giống, y hệt*
take advantage of	: *tận dụng, lợi dụng*
take account of	: *xem xét, quan tâm*
take away	: *di chuyển*
take back	: *rút lại (lời nói)*
take down	: *dời đi*
take in	: *cho ở trọ*
take in hand	: *đảm trách*
take into account	: *xem xét, để ý tới*
take off	: *cởi, lột, cất cánh (máy bay)*
take oneself off	: *bỏ trốn*
take on	: *đảm trách*
take out	: *loại khỏi, rút ra*
take up	: *ham thích, bảo trợ*
take up with	: *giao du với*
take place	: *thay thế, thay đổi*
take over	: *nắm quyền*

* Phrasal verbs with Bring *(Cụm động từ Bring)*

bring about	: *gây ra*
bring up	: *nuôi dưỡng*
bring something to light	: *khám phá, đem cái gì ra ánh* sáng
bring to an end	: *chấm dứt*
bring sb off	: *cứu ai*
bring sth on	: *đưa đến kết quả, gây ra cái gì*
bring sth up	: *lưu ý đến cái gì, nêu ra cái gì*
bring sb to sth	: *đưa ai lên (một cấp độ hoặc chuẩn mực khác)*

Prepositions after verbs: Giới từ sau động từ

Để nắm vững và áp dụng chính xác các giới từ đi theo sau động từ, chỉ có cách duy nhất mang lại hiệu quả là phải học thuộc lòng chúng và làm nhiều bài tập thuộc lĩnh vực giới từ.

Một số động từ có giới từ theo sau

concentrate on (v)	: *tập trung vào, chú ý vào*

focus on (v)	: *chú ý vào, chăm vào*
insist on (v)	: *khăng khăng, đòi cho bằng được*
complain about (v)	: *phàn nàn về điều gì*
worry about (v)	: *lo lắng về cái gì*
object to (v)	: *phản đối, chống đối*
rely on (v)	: *dựa vào, tùy thuộc, lệ thuộc*
depend on (v)	: *tùy thuộc vào, dựa vào*
consist of (v)	: *bao gồm*
cover with (v)	: *bao quanh, bao phủ*
bring up (v)	: *nuôi dưỡng*
happen to (v)	: *tình cờ (gặp)*
account for (v)	: *giải thích*
approve of (v)	: *tán thành*
agree with (sb) (v)	: *đồng ý với ai*
agree on (sth) (v)	: *đồng ý với cái gì*
bring about (v)	: *mang lại*
amount to (v)	: *lên tới*
ask for (v)	: *yêu cầu*
abide by (v)	: *tuân thủ*
belong to (v)	: *thuộc về (quyền sở hữu)*
believe in sb (v)	: *tin vào ai*
break down (v)	: *hỏng (máy)*
break into (v)	: *đột nhập vào*
break in (v)	: *ngắt lời*
break off (v)	: *tháo rời ra*
break out (v)	: *khởi phát bất ngờ, trốn thoát (bằng vũ lực)*
break up (v)	:*giải tán*
build up (v)	: *tích lũy*
call on (v)	: *ghé thăm, thăm viếng*
call up (v)	: *gọi điện*
look after (v)	: *chăm sóc*
take care of (v)	: *chăm sóc*
take after (v)	: *giống*

take up (v) : *chơi (theo đuổi một môn thể thao)*
take off (v) : *cất cánh*
catch up with (v) : *theo kịp, đuổi kịp*
check in (v) : *làm thủ tục nhập phòng, đăng kí (khách sạn)*
check out (v) : *làm thủ tục trả phòng (khách sạn)*
come across (v) : *tình cờ gặp*
come along (v) : *đến*
get on/along with (v) : *hòa thuận*
go over (v) : *xem xét kĩ*
give up (v) : *từ bỏ*
get rid of (v) : *từ bỏ*
turn up (v) : *đến, có mặt*
turn out (v) : *tắt (đèn hoặc lửa)*
turn on (v) : *bật, mở (máy móc)*
turn off (v) : *tắt (máy móc)*
turn down (v) : *vặn nhỏ (âm thanh)*
carry out (v) : *thực hiện, thực thi*
arrive in (v) : *đến (thành phố, đất nước)*
arrive at (v) : *đến (sân ga, phi trường)*
put off (v) : *hoãn lại*
put up (v) : *dựng lên*

Một số cụm từ quen thuộc: V+ O + preposition

prevent sb from doing sth (v) : *ngăn chặn ai làm điều gì*
stop sb from doing sth (v) : *ngăn cản ai làm điều gì*
accuse sb of doing sth (v) : *tố cáo ai làm điều gì*
blame sb for doing sth (v) : *khiển trách ai làm điều gì*
provide sb with sth (v) : *cung cấp cho ai cái gì*
point sth out (v) : *chỉ ra cái gì*
accustom onself/sb to sth (v) : *tự làm cho mình quen với cái gì*
apologise to sb for doing sth (v) : *xin lỗi ai về điều gì*
add sth to sth (v) : *thêm cái gì vào cái gì*
break sth off sth (v) : *tách cái gì ra khỏi cái gì*
conceal sth from sb (v) : *giấu ai điều gì*

introduce sb to sb (v) : *giới thiệu ai với ai*
complain to sb about sth (v) : *phàn nàn với ai về điều gì*
protect sb from sth (v) : *bảo vệ ai khỏi cái gì*
propose sb for a position (v) : *đề bạt ai lên một vị trí nào*
put a question to sb (v) : *đặt câu hỏi cho ai*
release sb from somewhere (v) : *giải phóng ai khỏi nơi đâu*
rescue sb from somewhere (v) : *cứu ai ra khỏi*

Phrasal verbs with Get *(Cụm động từ đi với Get)*

get at : *tới được*
get over : *bình phục, hồi phục*
get on : *lên (tàu, xe,...)*
get on (well) with somebody : *hòa thuận với ai*
get in : *trúng cử, được bầu*
get off : *xuống xe, thoát tội*
get up : *thúc dậy*
get on : *tiến bộ*
get along : *hòa thuận*
get away : *tránh khỏi, thoát khỏi*
get back away : *trả thù*
get by : *vượt qua được*
get down to : *bắt đầu làm việc gì*

CÁC EM HỌC THUỘC LÒNG CÁC CỤM TỪ SAU:

abide by st: *trung thành với, thoả thuận, tuân theo quyết định*
abound in/with st (a): *có cái gì với số lượng lớn*
absence from (n): *sự vắng mặt*
absolve sb from /of st (v): *xoá tội, miễn trách, bỏ qua*
absorbed in st (a): *chú ý vào cái gì, đam mê cái gì*
absorption in st (n): *sự thu hút hoặc bị thu hút*
abstain from st (v): *làm điều mình thích thú, kiêng, nhịn*
abstract st from st (v): *rút, tách, chiết*
abudant in st (a): *tràn đầy, nhiều*
abudant of st: *có dư*

acceptable to sb (a): *đáng chấp nhận*

by accident: *tình cờ, không có chủ ý*

accommodate st/oneself to st(v): *thay đổi hoặc điều chỉnh để thích nghi với tình hình mới*

accommodate sb with st (v): *giúp ai cái gì*

accord with st (v): *phù hợp hay hoà hợp với cái gì, tương xứng với cái gì*

accord st to sb: *dành cho ai quyền, trao quyền lực cho ai, dành cho ai cái gì, trao cho ai cái gì.*

Account: by/from all accounts: *theo những điều đã được nói, báo cáo.*

on account: *trả tiền trước, tiền cọc*

on account of: *vì, bởi, do bởi*

on this/that account: *vì lí do đó*

put/turn st to good account: *sử dụng (tiền, tài năng) tốt và hiệu quả.*

take account of st: *xem xét, chiếu cố điều gì.*

take st into account: *tính đến cái gì*

account for st(v): *giải thích nguyên nhân dẫn đến điều gì*

account for sb: *biết rõ ai và điều gì xảy ra với ai*

account for st to sb: *giải trình cái gì với ai.*

accountable to sb for st (a): *chịu trách nhiệm với ai trước vấn đề gì*

accuse sb of st (v): *nói rằng ai đó đã làm bậy, chê trách ai điều gì, buộc tội ai điều gì.*

accustom oneself /sb to st (v): *tự làm cho mình /cho ai quen với cái gì.*

accustomed to st (a): *quen với cái gì*

acquaint sb/oneself with st (v): *làm cho ai quen với cái gì/tự làm cho ai quen với cái gì, hiểu biết về cái gì.*

acquainted with st (a): *quen với cái gì*

acquaintance with st (n): *sự hiểu biết về cái gì*

acquaintance with sb (n): *quen biết riêng ai*

make the acquaintance of sb: *bắt đầu biết ai, gặp gỡ cá nhân ai*

act for: *thay mặt, đảm đương*

act on/upon st: *có hành động phù hợp, vì việc gì* action on st (n): *tác động, gây ảnh hưởng*

out of action: *không còn khả năng hoạt động hay vận hành*

adapt st for st (v): *thay đổi, đổi cái gì, làm cho phù hợp với cách sử dụng*

adapt oneself to st: *thích nghi*

accuse sb of st (v): *nói rằng ai đó đã làm bậy, chê trách ai điều gì, buộc tội ai điều gì.*

accustom oneself /sb to st (v): *tự làm cho mình /cho ai quen với cái gì.*

accustomed to st (a): *quen với cái gì*

acquaint sb/oneself with st (v): *làm cho ai quen với cái gì/tự làm cho ai quen với cái gì, hiểu biết về cái gì.*

acquainted with st (a): *quen với cái gì*

acquainted with sb (a): *làm quen với ai*

acquaintance with st (n): *sự hiểu biết về cái gì*

make the acquaintance of sb: *bắt đầu biết ai, gặp gỡ cá nhân ai*

acquit sb of st (v): *tha bổng, xoá tội*

act for: *thay mặt, đảm đương*

action on st (n): *tác động, gây ảnh hưởng*

out of action: *không còn khả năng hoạt động hay vận hành*

adapt st for st (v): *thay đổi, đổi cái gì, làm cho phù hợp với cách sử dụng*

adapt st from st: *chuyển thể*

adapt oneself to st: *thích nghi*

add st to st (v): *thêm vào*

add to st: *làm gia tăng thêm*

add up to st: *lên tới cái gì*

addicted to st (a): *bị nghiện ngập*

addition to drugs (n): *tình trạng dùng ma tuý*

addition to st (n): *bổ sung*

in addition to: *thêm vào đó, cộng thêm*

address oneself to st: *hướng sự chú ý của mình đến một vấn đề, xử trí việc gì*

adequate to/for st (a): *đầy đủ, thoả đáng việc gì* adjourn to (v): *dời, sang*

adjust st/oneself to st (v): *làm thích ứng, thích nghi với điều kiện mới*

admiration for sb/st (n): *sự khâm phục, ngưỡng mộ*

admire sb/st to st (v): *nhìn ai/vật gì trong lòng tôn trọng, hài lòng*

admission of st (n): *lời phát biểu thừa nhận sự thật của việc gì, sự thú nhận việc gì*

admission to st: *việc được nhận vào một tổ chức, trường học, ...*

admit to st/doing st (v): *thừa nhận, thú nhận việc gì*

admonish of (v): *cảnh cáo về*

advertise for (v): *quảng cáo tìm, đăng tin*

advise of (v): *khuyên răng về*

afford st to sb: *đem lại cho ai điều gì*

agree on st: *đồng ý về điều gì*

agree with sb: *đồng ý với ai*

agree with sb on st: *đồng ý với ai điều gì*

aid in (v): *giúp về*

aim at (v): *nhằm vào*

allow for (v): *nghĩ tới, dự liệu*

amount to (v): *lên tới, bằng*

answer to (v): *hợp với*

answer for (v): *chịu trách nhiệm về*

apologise to sb for st (v): *xin lỗi ai về điều gì*

appeal to (v): *quyến rũ*

appeal for (v): *kêu gọi*

apply to: *liên quan tới*

apply for: *nạp đơn xin dự tuyển*

appoint sb to a situation (v): *bầu ai lên chức vụ gì*

appoint time for (v): *định ngày giờ để*

approve of (v): *công nhận, tán thành*

argue with sb on st: *tranh luận với ai về điều gì* arrive at some place (v): *đến nơi nào*

arrive in some place (a city, country) (v): *tới một nơi nào đó*

ask sb for st (v): *xin ai điều gì*

ask st of (from) sb: *xin ai cái gì*

ask about: *hỏi về vấn đề gì /cái gì*

aspire after (v): *ham muốn*

associate with (v): *nhập bạn với, giao du với*

assure sb of st (v): *quả quyết với ai về vấn đề gì*

attach to (v): *dán vào, buộc vào*

attend to (v): *chú ý vào*

attribute to (v): *gán cho, cho là ở tại*

avail oneself of (v): *lợi dụng*

acceptable to sb (a): *vừa lòng ai, được ai công nhận*

accountable to sb for st (a): *phải trình bày với ai điều gì*

affected with a disease (a): *bị nhiễm bệnh*

affectionate to sb (a): *dễ thương đối với ai*

afraid of (a): *lo sợ, e ngại*

agreeable to sb (a): *vừa ý ai*

alien to (a): *hoàn toàn khác với*

ambitious of st (a): *cao vọng về điều gì, kì vọng về điều gì*

amused at (with) st (a): *vui vẻ với điều gì*

angry at st (a): *giận giữ về điều gì*

annoyed at st (a): *buồn giận việc gì*

angry with sb for doing st: *giận dữ ai vì điều gì*

anxious about st (a): *lo sợ về điều gì*

anxious for sb (a): *lo sợ cho ai*

applicable to a case (a): *có thể áp dụng cho một trường hợp nào*

appropriate to (a): *thích hợp với*

ashamed of st (a): *xấu hổ về điều gì*

attached to sb (a): *quyến luyến*

attendant on sb (a): *hầu hạ ai*
awake from sleep: *tỉnh dậy*
awake of st (a): *coi chừng về điều gì*
ability for (in) some work (n): *khả năng làm công việc gì*
affection for sb (n): *cảm tình với ai*
ambition for st (n): *sự ham muốn điều gì*
anxiety for st /sb (n): *lo lắng về điều gì/ a*
apology for some fault (n): *tạ lỗi*
application for a job (n): *đơn xin việc làm*
attraction for sb (n): *hấp dẫn đối với ai*
back up (v): *ủng hộ, nâng đỡ*
banish from (v): *xua đuổi khỏi*
bear away (v): *thắng, đoạt được*
bark at (v): *sủa*
become of (v): *xảy ra cho*
beat down a price (v): *trả giá*
beg sb to do st (v): *năn nỉ ai làm điều gì*
beg for (v): *xin*
begin with (v): *bắt đầu bằng*
behave towards (v): *đối xử với ai*
believe in (v): *tin tưởng*
belong to (v): *thuộc về*
bequeath st to sb (v): *để lại cái gì cho ai*
bend one's mind to st (v): *cố quyết tâm vào cái gì*
bet on (v): *cá độ, đánh cộc vào*
beware of (v): *coi chừng*
blame sb for st (v): *trách ai về điều gì*
boast of (v): *khoe khoang, khoác lác về*
break st in two (v): *bẻ vật gì ra làm hai*
break down st (v): *đẩy cho đổ xuống*

break up st (v): *phá tan vật gì*
break off st (v): *ngắt ra khỏi*
break into a house: *đột nhập vào nhà*
break into laughter: *phá lên cười*
break with (v): *dứt khoát, chừa*
Break oneself of a habit (v): *từ bỏ một thói quen, chừa bỏ một tật xấu*
bring about (v): *gây ra*
break the news to sb (v): *đưa tin cho ai*
bring to an end (v): *chấm dứt*
bring sb to his sense (v): *làm ai nghĩ lại*
burst into tears (v): *khóc oà*
burn with hope (v): *say hi vọng*
build one's hope on (v): *xây dựng hi vọng trên*
busy oneself with (v): *tự làm bận rộn*
bare of st (a): *trơ trụi*
based on st (a): *dựa trên điều gì*
beloved of all (a): *được yêu hơn tất cả mọi người*
beneficent to sb (a): *có lòng tốt với ai*
beneficial to sb (a): *lợi ích cho ai*
blind to st (a): *mù quáng không thấy gì*
boastful of st (a): *khoe khoang điều gì*
born in a place (a): *sinh ra ở nơi nào đó*
bound for a place (a): *đi tới đâu (tàu, thuyền)*
busy with st (a): *bận công việc gì*
caculate on (v): *tin cậy, chắc chắn về*
call at a place (v): *ghé vào một nơi nào đó*
call on sb (v): *ghé thăm ai*
call to sb (v): *gọi ai*
call for (v): *đòi hỏi*
call up (v): *gọi điện thoại*

care for (v): *thích, săn sóc*
carry on a conversation with Sb (v): *tiếp tục trò chuyện với ai*
catch up with (v): *bắt kịp*
catch in the act (v): *bắt quả tang*
catch on (v): *trở nên phổ biến*
challenge sb to st (v): *thách đố ai làm gì*
change st into st (v): *biến đổi vật gì thành vật gì*
charge sb with (v): *đổ tội cho ai*
charge a price for goods (v): *đòi giá về sản phẩm*
cheat sb out of money (v): *lường gạt ai để lấy tiền*
choke (up) with (v): *đầy ứ những gì*
choke sb to death (v): *bóp nghẹt ai đến chết*
choose between two things (v): *chọn giữa hai vật*
class .... with (v): *xếp vào hạng*
close with (v): *tới gần (với mục đích tấn công)*
come across: *tình cờ gặp*
come to an end (v): *chấm dứt*
come to an agreement (v): *đi tới chỗ thỏa thuận*
come to (v): *lên tới*
come into fashion (v): *hợp thời trang*
come into effect (v): *có hiệu lực*
come up to (v): *lên tới*
come to a decision (v): *đi đến quyết định*
commune with (v): *thông cảm với*
communicate st to sb (v): *thông báo điều gì cho ai*
communicate with sb on st (v): *trao đổi với ai về vấn đề gì*
compare with (v): *so sánh*
compare to (v): *so sánh (2 đối tượng khác nhau)*
compete with sb for st (v): *ganh đua với ai để dành được vật gì*
complain to sb about st (v): *kêu ca với ai về điều gì*

complain against sb (v): *kêu về ai*
comply with (v): *tuân theo, đồng ý*
conceal st from sb (v): *giấu ai điều gì*
concern oneself with (in, about) (v): *chú ý tới, thích thú về*
concur with sb in st (v): *đồng ý với ai về điều gì*
conduce to (v): *giúp vào, đem lại*
confess to st (v): *thú nhận điều gì là đúng*
confide st to sb (v): *thổ lộ điều gì với ai*
confide in sb (v): *tin tưởng vào ai*
conform to st (v): *quy phục*
conform with (v): *lầm với*
congratulate sb on st (v): *khen ai về điều gì*
consist of (v): *làm bằng, bao gồm*
consist in (v): *tại ở, quyết định ở, do*
contrast with (v): *đối chiếu với*
contribute to (v): *góp phần vào, giúp vào*
convert ......into st (v): *biến thành cái gì*
cooperate with sb in st (v): *cộng tác với ai trong việc gì*
cope with (v): *khắc phục được*
copy from st (v): *bắt chước theo*
correspond with sb (v): *giao dịch thư tín với ai.*
correspond to st (v): *ứng với, hợp với*
count on sb (v): *tin cậy ai*
count for nothing (v): *không có giá trị, không có kết quả*
couple with (v): *đi đôi với*
cry for (v): *khóc đòi*
capable of st (a): *có thể làm được điều gì*
careful about one's dress (a): *để ý đến cách ăn mặc*
careful of one's money (a): *cẩn thận về tiền bạc*
careless of st (a): *không để ý tới, bất cẩn*

careless about one's appearance (a): *không chú ý tới bề ngoài*

chargeable to one's account (a): *khấu trừ vào tài khoản*

clear of st (a): *khỏi, miễn*

common to sb (a): *chung cho ai*

communicative of st (a): *giãi bày điều gì*

comparable to st (a): *có thể so sánh với điều gì*

concerned in/with st (a): *can dụ vào việc gì*

concerned about st (sb) (a): *lo lắng về việc gì/cho ai*

condutive to (a): *giúp vào*

confident of success (a): *chắc chắn thành công*

confident in sb (a): *tin tưởng ai*

conscious of st (a): *ý thức được điều gì*

consequent on (upon) some cause (a): *kết quả là do duyên cớ nào.*

constant in st (a): *vững tin về điều gì*

contemporary with sb (a): *đồng thời với ai*

contrary to st (a): *đối lập với, trái với*

contrasted with (a): *tương phản với*

convenient for sb (a): *thuận tiện cho ai*

coupled with st (a): *hợp với, đi đôi với*

customary for sb (a): *thói quen đối với ai*

capacity for a subject (n): *khả năng về môn nào*

charge of murder (n): *tố cáo, giết người*

claim for damages (n): *đòi tiền thiệt hại*

comment on (upon) st (n): *lời phê bình việc gì*

compact with sb (n): *sự thỏa thuận với ai*

comparison with sb (n): *sự so sánh với ai/vật gì*

competition for st (n): *tranh giành điều gì*

complaint about st (n): *lời phàn nàn về điều gì*

connection between two things: *mối liên quan giữa hai việc*

connection with sb (n): *sự giao thiệp với ai*

consideration for sb/st (n): *sự chú ý đến ai/cái gì*

consciousness of guilty (n): *ý thức về tội lỗi*

contribution to (n): *sự phụ giúp vào, sự đóng góp vào*

conversation with sb (n): *sự đàm thoại với ai*

deal with sb (v): *giao thiệp với ai*

deal in st (v): *buôn đồ gì*

deal with a subject (v): *viết về, bàn về*

debate on (about) st (v): *bàn cãi về*

decide on st (v): *quyết định về việc gì*

declare for (v): *tuyên bố ủng hộ*

decrease in (v): *sa sút về*

defend sb from (against) (v): *bênh vực ai khỏi*

defer to (v): *nhượng, chịu*

delight in (v): *thích thú về*

deliver sb from st (v): *cứu ai khỏi điều gì*

depart for (v): *khởi hành tới đâu*

depart from (v): *sửa bỏ, bỏ*

depart from life (v): *chết, qua đời*

depart from one's words (promise) (v): *không giữ lời*

depend on (v): *tuỳ vào, phụ thuộc vào*

deprive sb of st (v): *làm ai mất vật gì*

derive from (v): *lấy ra được/ phát xuất từ*

devote st to ......(v): *hi sinh, dâng hiến cho*

die of disease (v): *chết vì bệnh gì*

die from some cause (v): *chết vì một lí do nào đó*

die for st (v): *muốn điều gì*

differ from sb (v): *bất đồng ý kiến với ai*

differ in st (v): *khác nhau về điểm gì*

direct sb to a place (v): *chỉ đường cho ai tới*

disable sb from doing st (v): *khiến ai bất lực không làm được điều gì*

Disagree with sb on st (v): *bất đồng ý kiến với ai về điều gì*
disapprove of st (v): *không công nhận, không tán thành*
discourage sb from doing st (v): *ngăn cản ai không làm điều gì*
discuss st with sb (v): *tranh luận về điều gì với ai*
dismiss sb from a position (v): *sa thải ai ra khỏi một địa vị/vị trí*
dispose of (v): *bỏ, bán*
dispute with sb on (about) st (v): *tranh luận với ai về vấn đề gì*
dissolve in (v): *tan trong*
distinguish by a mark (v): *phân biệt nhờ dấu*
distribute among (v): *phân chia giữa*
dive into (v): *nhào xuống*
dive into a book (subject) (v): *khảo cứu sâu một cuốn sách (vấn đề)*
divide ...... into (v): *chia... .thành*
dream of (v): *mơ tới*
dwell on st(v): *suy nghĩ, viết hoặc nói về vấn đề gì*
delivered from st (a): *được cứu thoát điều gì*
dependent on st (sb) (a): *tuỳ thuộc vào*
destructive of health (a): *hại cho sức khoẻ*
determine on doing st (a): *cương quyết làm gì*
devoted to (a): *hi sinh cho, mải miết*
difficult for sb to do st (a): *khó cho ai làm việc gì*
different from st (a): *khác với điều gì*
disable for st (a): *không đủ năng lực làm việc gì*
disaffected to the government (a): *bất mãn với chính phủ*
disagreeable to sb (a): *khó chịu đối với ai*
disappointed of st not obtained (a): *thất vọng vì điều gì không đạt được*
disappointed in st obtained (a): *thất vọng vì cái gì đã đạt được*
disappointed in sb (a): *thất vọng về ai*
disgraceful to sb (a): *bị người nào ghét bỏ*
disloyal to sb (a): *bất trung, bội nghĩa với ai*

displeased with sb (a): *bất mãn với ai*

disqualified for a job (a): *không đủ khả năng làm việc gì*

distant from a place (a): *xa một nơi nào*

distinct from something else (a): *phân biệt với*

distinguishable from st (a): *có thể phân biệt với*

due to (a): *do tại*

dull of understanding (a): *chậm hiểu*

demand on st (sb) (n): *sự đòi hỏi, yêu cầu gì*

demand for sb (st) (n): *cần ai (điều gì)*

dissagreement with sb (n): *bất đồng ý kiến với ai*

dislike for (of) st (sb) (n): *sự ghét vật gì (ai)*

doubt of (about) st (n): *sự hồ nghi về điều gì*

draw up (v): *thảo (tài liệu)*

draw out (v): *kéo dài, gia hạn*

dream up (v): *bịa đặt, tưởng tượng*

drop off (v): *ngủ thiếp đi, cho xuống xe (hành khách)*

drop out (v): *rút ra khỏi (cuộc đấu), bỏ ra ngoài, không ghi vào danh sách*

employ someone in a work (v): *dùng ai vào việc gì*

engage in (v): *bận rộn vào*

engage with a person to do something (v): *hứa với ai làm việc gì*

enrich with (v): *làm giàu bằng (nghĩa đen, nghĩa bóng)*

enter into (v): *bắt đầu, gia nhập*

enqual someone in something (v): *bằng ai về điều gì*

escape from (v): *trốn khỏi*

examine into something (v): *nghiên cứu về*

examine a candidate in a subject (v): *sát hạch thí sinh về môn gì*

exchange one thing for another (v): *đổi một vật lấy vật khác*

explain to someone (v): *cắt nghĩa cho ai, giải thích*

explain to someone about something (v): *giải thích cho ai về điều gì*

educated in a subject (adj): *giỏi về môn học nào*

employed in a place (adj): *được dùng làm việc gì ở đâu*
empty of something (adj): *trống rỗng, không có gì*
engaged to someone (adj): *đính hôn với ai*
equal to (adj): *bằng với*
equivalent to something (adj): *tương đương với*
essential to something (adj): *cần thiết cho*
exhausted with (adj): *mệt nhoài vì làm việc vất vả*
exposed to danger (adj): *xông pha nguy hiểm*
experience in doing something (n): *kinh nghiệm làm gì*
examination in English (n): *kỳ thi, bài thi Tiếng Anh*
experiment in a matter (n): *thí nghiệm về môn gì*
exposure to danger/ weather (n): *sự phơi bày ra ngoài nguy hiểm*
(keep an) eye on: *để ý, canh chừng*
(have)an eye for be: *biết nhận thức, con mắt tinh đời*
(keep one's) eyes open: *để ý theo dõi, cảnh giác*
(see) eye to eye: *đồng ý*
(up to the) eyes in: *miệt mài*
(with an) eye to: *nhắm đến*
(set) eyes on: *nhìn*
(have) eyes for: *quan tâm, ham muốn*
fail in (v): *thất bại*
fall in love with (v): *phải lòng (yêu ai)*
familiarize ....with (v): *làm .... quen với*
fear for someone's safety (v): *lo sợ cho sự an toàn của ai*
feed on something (v): *nuôi sống bằng*
feel up to something (v): *cảm thấy dễ chịu để làm việc gì*
fight for (v): *chiến đấu cho*
flirt with someone (v): *tán tỉnh ai đó*
flow from..... to ....(v): *chảy từ đâu vào đâu*
free..... from (v): *giải thoát khỏi*

faithful to someone (adj): *trung thành với ai*

familar with a language (adj): *giỏi về một ngoại ngữ*

familar to someone (adj): *quen thuộc đối với ai*

famous for something (adj): *nổi tiếng về cái gì*

fascinated with (by) someone (something) (adj): *bị quyến rũ, mê hoặc vì ai, mê hoặc vì điều gì*

favorable for (to) (adj): *thuận cho, giúp ích cho*

fearful of something (adj): *sợ điều gì*

fearless of something (adj): *không sợ điều gì*

fertile in resources (adj): *dồi dào về nguyên liệu*

fond of something (adj): *thích điều gì*

forgetful of something (adj): *hay quên điều gì*

fortunate for someone (adj): *may mắn cho ai*

free of duty/ debt (adj): *khỏi nhiệm vụ/ hết nợ*

friendly to someone (adj): *thân với ai*

full of something (adj): *tràn đầy*

go off one's head (v): *hoá điên*

go about (v): *khởi công, bắt tay vào công việc*

go along with (v): *hài lòng với, đồng lòng với*

go back on fail (v): *không giữ lời hứa*

go down (v): *trở nên ít hơn, rút xuống (nước)*

go over (v): *xét từng chi tiết, tập dượt lại, xem lại*

go through (v): *hoàn thành (công việc), đi qua, thảo luận chi tiết, chịu đựng*

go up (v): *tăng (giá cả), vào đại học, thiêu đốt*

go with (v): *hợp với, sánh với, cùng với*

go without (v): *không có, thiếu chịu*

good at a subject (adj): *giỏi môn nào*

good for something (adj): *lợi cho, ích cho*

generous with one's money (adj): *rộng rãi tiền bạc*

grateful to someone for something (adj): *biết ơn ai về điều gì*

gratitude for something (n): *biết ơn về điều gì*

habituate sb to st (v): *tập cho ai quen điều gì*

happen to sb (v): *xảy ra cho ai*

harmonize with (v): *ăn với, hợp với*

heal sb of a disease (v): *chữa ai khỏi bệnh*

hear from sb (v): *biết tin tức của ai, nhận thư ai*

hear of (about) (v): *nghe về*

help ..... over a difficulty (v): *giúp ai qua nỗi khổ nào*

hestitate about (v): *lưỡng lự về, do dự về việc gì*

hide st from sb (v): *giấu ai điều gì*

hope for st (v): *hi vọng điều gì*

hopeful of success (a): *hi vọng thành công*

hopeless of st (a): *không hi vọng điều gì*

increase in (v): *tăng thêm về*

inform sb of st (v): *báo tin cho ai biết điều gì*

insist on st (v): *nhấn mạnh điều gì*

inspire st into sb (v): *tạo hứng thú cho ai*

interest sb in st (v): *làm ai thích cái gì*

interfere with (v): *hoà mình vào, xen vào*

introduce sb to sb (v): *giới thiệu ai với ai*

invest in st (v): *mua cái gì*

invest money in some business (v): *đầu tư tiền vào việc gì*

involve sb in debt (v): *làm ai mắc nợ*

identical with st (a): *giống hệt nhau*

imitative of a model (a): *mô phỏng theo một khuôn mẫu*

impatient for st (a): *nóng lòng chờ đợi một điều gì*

important to (a): *quan trọng cho*

impossible to sb (a): *không thể được đối với ai*

impossible for sb to do st (a): *đối với ai không thể làm được việc gì*

inadequate to the needs (a): *không đủ cho nhu cầu* incapable of st (a): *không thể làm được*

incident to (a): *đi liền với*

inconvenient to sb (a): *không tiện cho ai*

independent of sb (a): *không phụ thuộc vào ai*

jump over (a gate, a fence....): *nhảy qua (cổng, hàng rào...)*

jealous of sb's success (a): *ghen tị với sự thành công của ai*

jealous of sb's reputation (a): *ghen tị với thanh danh của ai*

keep from (v): *kiêng*

keep in with sb (v): *chơi thân với ai*

keep on at sb (v): *quấy rầy ai*

keep st to oneself (v): *giữ lấy riêng cho mình*

knock at door (v): *gõ gửa*

know about st (v): *biết về cái gì*

know of sb (v): *biết tin về ai*

keen on st (a): *thích điều gì*

kind to sb (a): *tử tế với ai*

key to the door: *chìa khoá cửa*

keep off (v): *làm phải tránh xa ra, tránh đỡ*

keep at (v): *kiên trì, bền bĩ*

keep away (v): *để ra xa*

keep down (v): *giữ mức thấp nhất, nằm phục kích*

keep on (v): *tiếp tục, tiến hành*

keep out (v): *cứ ở bên ngoài, loại trừ*

keep to (v): *gia nhập*

kind of: *phần nào, chừng mực nào*

knock about (v): *hành hạ, liên hồi, tình cờ*

knock back (v): *lung túng, bối rối*

knock down (v): *đập tan, đánh vỡ*

knock off (v): *quan hệ bất chính, quan hệ tình dục bất chính*

knock out (v): *hạ gục*

land at a place (v): *tới một nơi*
land on a coast (v): *đổ bộ lên bãi*
lead to a place (v): *đưa tới đâu*
leave for somewhere (v): *đến đâu đó*
leave somewhere for somewhere (v): *rời chỗ nào để đến chỗ nào.*
listen to someone (something) (v): *lắng nghe ai*
live on something (v): *sống nhờ vào cái gì*
live in a small way (v): *sống âm thầm*
live to oneself (v): *sống một mình không có bạn bè*
live up to an ideal (v): *sống theo đúng một lý tưởng*
look at (v): *nhìn vào*
look after (v): *chăm sóc*
look for something (v): *tìm kiếm cái gì*
look into some matter (v): *nghiên cứu cẩn thận một vấn đề gì*
look on (upon)..........as........ *coi như........*
look forward to something (v): *mong ngóng điều gì*
make something from something (v): *lấy cái gì làm nên cái gì*
make something into something (v): *lấy cái gì hoá thành cái gì*
make something for someone (v): *làm điều gì cho ai*
make up for (v): *đền bù*
make up one's mind (v): *quyết định*
make over (v): *chuyển giao quyền sở hữu*
make off (v): *mất, chuồng mất, đi mất*
make out (v): *nhận thức, xác định*
made of (v): *làm bằng*
naked of clothing: *không mặc quần áo*
near to a place (adj): *gần một nơi nào.*
necessary to something/someone: *cần thiết cho việc gì (cho ai)*
neglectful of (adj): *Không để ý đến*
need of something (n): *cần điều gì*

object to something (v): *phản đối điều gì.*

occur to someone (v): *xảy ra cho ai.1*

obedient to someone (adj): *vâng lời ai.*

obliged for something (adj): *biết ơn về điều gì*

oblivious of something (adj): *hay quên điều gì.*

opposed to (adj): *phản đối*

opposite to a place (adj): *đối diện với một nơi nào*

(in) obedience to (n): *tuân theo*

outlook for something (n): *sự sắp xảy ra tới với việc gì*

outlook on life (n): *quan điểm về cuộc sống*

outlook from a window: *cảnh nhìn từ cửa sổ*

outlook on (over) seas, mountains: *cảnh nhìn ra biển, núi*

pay for (v): *phải khổ vì, trả tiền, đều bù*

pick out (v): *chọn, phân biệt được*

pick up with someone:*đánh bạn với ai*

pick someone up: *đón ai*

plead for (v): *nài xin*

point at someone (v): *chỉ vào ai*

pour into (v): *đổ vào (nghĩa đen, nghĩa bóng)*

praise someone for something (v): *khen ai về điều gì*

prefer one thing to another (v): *thích điều này hơn điều kia*

pride oneself on (upon): *hãnh diện về*

propose someone for a position: *đề bạt ai lên một địa vị*

propose something to someone (v): *đề nghị điều gì lên ai*

propose to a girl (v): *cầu hôn với một cô gái*

protect someone from something (v): *bảo vệ ai khỏi điều gì*

provide someone with something (v): *cung cấp cho ai cái gì*

put an end to (v): *chấm dứt*

put someone to death (v): *giết ai*

put a law in force (v): *bắt ai thi hành một đạo luật* put about (v): *loan truyền, đổi ngược hướng*

put across (v): *truyền đạt*

put away (v):*cất đi (một vật gì)*

put down (v): *làm nhục, đưa vào bài viết, đưa tên ai vào danh sách*

put off (v): *hoãn lại, trì hoãn, gây khó khăn*

put on (v): *mặc áo quần, trang phục, làm cho trở nên hữu dụng, vặn (kim đồng hồ)*

put on weight (v): *tăng cân*

put through (v): *hoàn thành, liên lạc bằng điện thoại*

quarrelsome with someone (adj):

quick at a subject (adj): *học nhanh môn gì*

quick at hearing (adj): *nghe thính*

quick of (adj): *bỏ đi, gạt bỏ*

qualification for an office (n): *tài năng làm một công việc*

refer something to some cause: *được điều gì từ cái gì*

refer to something (v): *tham khảo, nói ám chỉ điều gì*

resort to (v): *cần tới, lui tới nơi nào.*

rest on (v): *tựa vào, toạ lạc trên*

result from (v): *kết quả do đâu*

result in (v): *kết quả đi tới đâu*

return to (v): *trở về*

revert to (v): *trở về (vấn đề gì)*

rid someone of (v): *cứu ai khỏi*

run after (v): *theo đuổi, đuổi theo*

run about (v): *vội vàng*

run along (v): *đuổi đi*

run around (v): *đáp xe, đi xe*

run away (v): *chạy trốn, né tránh*

run away with (v): *giành được*

run down(v): *hạ thấp, làm giảm giá trị* run in (v): *chạy ra đa, chạy thử máy*

run into (v): *va chạm vào, gặp gỡ, hội ngộ*

run across(v): *tình cờ, tình cờ tìm ra*

run off(v): *tẩu thoát, chảy xiết*

run off with (v): *lấy trộm*

run on (v): *tiếp tục*

run out (v): *chấm dứt, cạn*

run out on (v): *đào ngũ*

run over(v): *cản, gây tai nạn*

(in) turn (v): *nối tiếp nhau*

(in one's) turn (v): *đến lượt*

(out of) turn (v): *không phải lượt*

turn about (v): *xoay hướng, trở mặt*

turn around (v): *xoay quanh*

turn away (v): *ngoảnh mặt*

turn back (v): *lùi bước*

turn in (v): *giao, trao, gửi trả*

turn off(v): *tắt, ngắt*

turn on (v): *bật lên, mở lên, khởi động*

turn out (v): *dập tắt, hoá ra, kết quả dẫn giải*

turn round (v): *quay về phía, đổi hướng*

turn up (v): *xuất hiện, vát mặt tới, vặn lớn*

* Một số thành ngữ động từ thường gặp:

give way to: nhượng bộ, chịu thua

give place to: nhường chỗ

give birth to: sinh con

lose sight u p: mất hút

lose touch with: mất liên lạc

catch sight up: bắt gặp

keep pace/up, with: sánh kịp, bắt kịp

lose track of: mất dấu
pay attention to: chú ý tới
put an end to: kết thúc
put a stop to: làm ngừng lại
make allowance for: chiếu cố đến
make fun of: chế nhạo
make a fuss over/about: làm rối tung lên, làm om sòm
make room for: dọn chỗ cho
make use of: dung, sử dụng
take account of: để ý đến, lưu tâm
take care of: chăm sóc
take notice of: lưu ý
take advantage of: lợi dụng
take note of: để ý, ghi chép
take leave of: từ biệt
make a contribution to: góp phần
make complaint about: kêu ca, phàn nàn
make a decision on/make up one's mind: quyết định
set fire to: làm cháy, thiêu
keep correspondence with: liên lạc thư từ
have a look at: nhìn ngắm
have faith in: tin tưởng
show affection for: có cảm tình
feel shame at: xấu hổ
feel pity for: thương xót
feel regret for: hối tiếc, ân hận
feel sympathy for: thông cảm
take/have pity on: thương xót
take interested in: quan tâm, thích thú
get victory over: chiến thắng
play an influence over: có ảnh hưởng

BẢNG ĐỘNG TỪ BẤT QUI TẮC

INFINITIVE	PAST TENSE	PAST PARTICIPLE
abide	abode/ abided	abode/ abided
arise	arose	arisen
awake	awoke	awoken
be	was/were	been
bear	bore	born
beat	beat	beaten
become	became	become
befall	befell	befallen
begin	began	begun
behold	beheld	beheld
bend	bent	bent
beset	beset	beset
bespeak	bespoke	bespoken
bid	bid	bid
bid	bade	bidden
bind	bound	bound
bite	bit	bitten
bleed	bled	bled
bless	blessed	blessed, blest
blow	blew	blown
break	broke	broken
breed	bred	bred
bring	brought	brought
broadcast	broadcast	broadcast
build	built	built
burn	burnt/ burned	burnt/ burned
burst	burst	burst
buy	bought	bought
cast	cast	cast
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
cling	clung	clung
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
creep	crept	crept
crow	crew crowed	crowed
cut	cut	cut
deal	dealt	dealt
dig	dug	dug
dive	dove	dived

	dived	
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
dream	dreamt	dreamt
	dreamed	dreamed
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
dwell	dwelt	dwelt
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feed	fed	fed
feel	felt	felt
fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
flee	fled	fled
fling	flung	flung
fly	flew	flown
forbear	forbore	forborn
forbid	forbade	forbidden
	forbad	
foresee	forsaw	forseen
foretell	foretold	foretold
forget	forgot	forgotten
forgive	forgave	forgiven
forsake	forsook	forsaken
freeze	froze	frozen
get	got	got
		gotten
gild	gilt	gilt
	gilled	gilled
gird	girt	girt
	girded	girded
give	gave	given
go	went	gone
grind	ground	ground
grow	grew	grown
hang	hung	hung
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
heave	hove	hove
	heaved	heaved
hew	hewed	hewn

hide	hid	hidden
hit	hit	hit
hold	held	held
hurt	hurt	hurt
inlay	inlaid	inlaid
input	input	input
inset	inset	inset
keep	kept	kept
kneel	knelt	knelt
	kneeled	kneeled
knit	knit	knit
	knitted	knitted
know	knew	known
lay	laid	laid
lead	led	led
lean	leant	leant
	leaned	leaned
leap	leapt	leapt
	leaped	leaped
learn	learnt	learnt
	learned	learned
leave	left	left
lend	lent	lent
let	let	let
lie	lay	lain
light	lit	lit
	lighted	lighted
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
mislay	mislaid	mislaid
mislead	misled	misled
misread	misread	misread
misspell	misspelt	misspelt
mistake	mistook	mistaken
misunderstand	misunderstood	misunderstood
mow	mowed	mown
		mowed
outbid	outbid	outbid
outdo	outdid	outdone
outgrow	outgrew	outgrown

output	output	output
outrun	outran	outrun
outsell	outsold	outsold
overcome	overcame	overcome
overeat	overate	overeaten
overfly	overflew	overflown
overhang	overhung	overhung
overhear	overheard	overheard
overlay	overlaid	overlaid
overpay	overpaid	overpaid
overrun	overran	overrun
oversee	oversaw	overseen
overshoot	overshot	overshot
oversleep	overslept	overslept
overtake	overtook	overtaken
overthrow	overthrew	overthrown
pay	paid	paid
prove	proved	proven proved
put	put	put
read	read	read
rebuild	rebuilt	rebuilt
recast	recast	recast
redo	redid	redone
remake	remade	remade
rend	rent	rent
repay	repaid	repaid
resell	resold	resold
retake	retook	retaken
retell	retold	retold
rewrite	rewrote	rewritten
rid	rid	rid
ride	rode	ridden
ring	rang	rung
rise	rose	risen
run	ran	run
saw	sawed	sawn
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
seek	sought	sought
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent

set	set	set
sew	sewed	sewn sewed
shake	shook	shaken
shear	sheared	shom
shed	shed	shed
shine	shone	shone
shoot	shot	shot
show	showed	shown showed
shrink	shrank shrunk	shrunk
shut	shut	shut
sing	sang	sung
sink	sank	sunk
sit	sat	sat
slay	slew	slain
sleep	slept	slept
slide	slid	slid
sling	slung	slung
slink	slunk	slunk
smell	smelt	smelt
smite	smote	smitten
sow	sowed	sown sowed
speak	spoke	spoken
speed	sped speeded	sped speeded
spell	spelt spelled	spelt spelled
spend	spent	spent
spill	spilt spilled	spilt spilled
spin	spun span	spun
spit	spat	spat
split	split	split
spoil	spoilt spoiled	spoilt spoiled
spread	spread	spread
spring	sprang	sprung
stand	stood	stood

stave	stove staved	stove staved
steal	stole	stolen
stick	stuck	stuck
sting	stung	stung
stink	stunk stank	stunk
strew	strewed	strewn strewed
stride	strode	stridden
strike	struck	struck
string	strung	strung
strive	strove	striven
swear	swore	sworn
sweep	swept	swept
swell	swelled	swollen swelled
swim	swam	swum
swing	swung	swung
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tear	tore	torn
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
throw	threw	thrown
thrust	thrust	thrust
tread	trod	trodden trod
unbend	unbent	unbent
undercut	undercut	undercut
undergo	underwent	undergone
underlie	underlay	underlain
underpay	underpaid	underpaid
undersell	undersold	undersold
understand	understood	understood
undertake	undertook	undertaken
underwrite	underwrote	underwritten
underdo	underdid	underdone
unfreeze	unfroze	unfrozen
unwind	unwound	unwound
uphold	upheld	upheld
upset	upset	upset

wake	woke waked	woken waked
waylay	waylaid	waylaid
wear	wore	worn
weave	wove weaved	woven weaved
wed	wed wedded	wed wedded
weep	wept	wept
wet	wet wetted	wet wetted
win	won	won
wind	wound	wound
withdraw	withdrew	withdrawn
withhold	withheld	withheld
withstand	withstood	withstood
work	wrought worked	wrought worked
wring	wrung	wrung
write	wrote	written

MỤC LỤC

Trang
LỜI NÓI ĐẦU 3
Chuyên đề 1: PHONETICS (NGỮ ÂM) 4
Chuyên đề 2: TENSES (CÁC THÌ) 13
Chuyên đề 3: REPORTED SPEED (CÂU TƯỜNG THUẬT) 53
Chuyên đề 4: PASSIVE VOICE (CÂU BỊ ĐỘNG) 91
Chuyên đề 5: CONDITIONAL SENTENCES (CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN) 130
Chuyên đề 6: EXPRESSIONS WITH WISH (CÂU DIỄN ĐẠT VỚI *WISH*)..... 154
Chuyên đề 7: ARTICLE (MẠO TỪ) 161
Chuyên đề 8: FULL INFINITIVE; GERUND; BARE INFINITIVE 171
Chuyên đề 9: ADVERBIAL CLAUSES (MỆNH ĐỀ TRẠNG NGỮ) 178
BẢNG ĐỘNG TỪ BẤT QUY TẮC 215

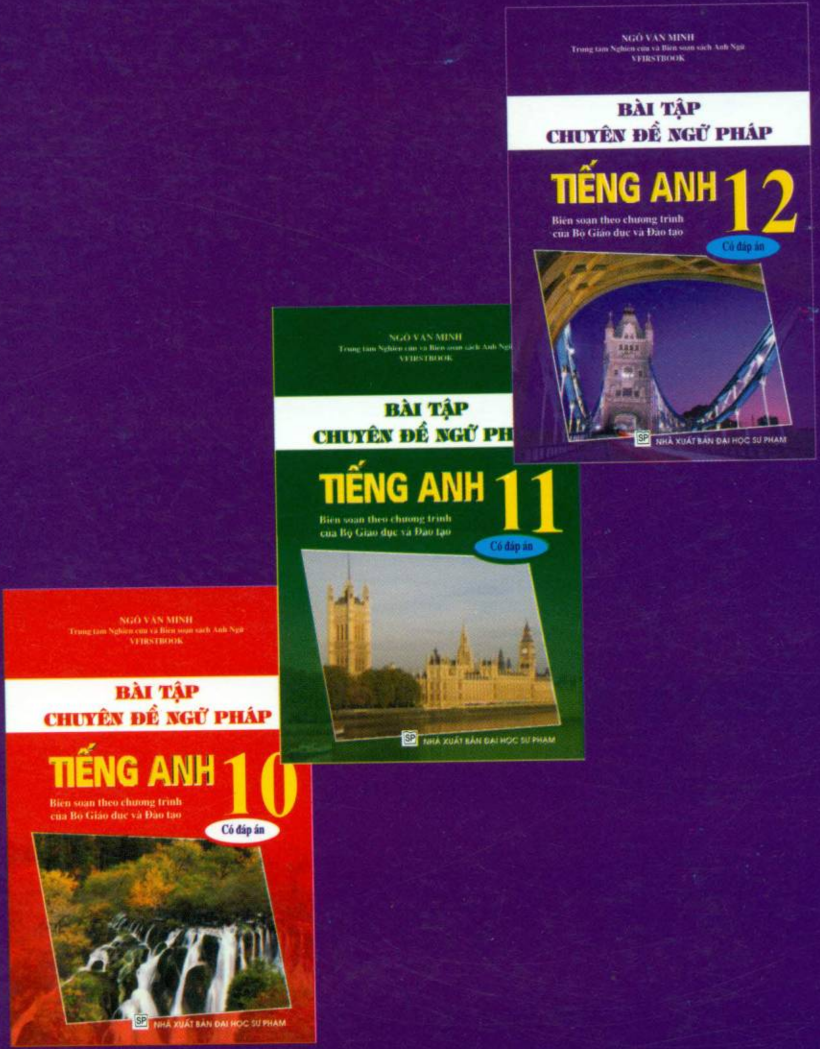
NHÀ XUẤT BẢN ĐẠI HỌC SƯ PHẠM
136 Đường Xuân Thủy - Quận Cầu Giấy - Hà Nội
Điện thoại: (04) 37547735 - Fax: (04) 37547911

Chịu trách nhiệm xuất bản:
Giám đốc: ĐINH NGỌC BẢO
Tổng biên tập: LÊ A
Chịu trách nhiệm nội dung và bản quyền:
TRUNG TÂM VĂN HÓA TRÀNG AN

Biên tập nội dung:
HỒ MINH HẰNG
Trình bày bìa: NGÔ VĂN MINH

BÀI TẬP CHUYÊN ĐỀ NGỮ PHÁP TIẾNG ANH 12

In 2000 cuốn, khổ 16x24cm, tại Xí nghiệp in Công nghệ – 260 Cầu Giấy
Đăng kí KHXB số: 447– 2009/ CXB/50-30/ĐHSP ngày 25/5/2009
In xong và nộp lưu chiểu tháng 1 năm 2010



NGÔ VĂN MINH
Trung tâm Nghiên cứu và Biên soạn sách Anh Ngữ
VFIRSTBOOK

BÀI TẬP
CHUYÊN ĐỀ NGỮ PHÁP

TIẾNG ANH 12

Biên soạn theo chương trình
của Bộ Giáo dục và Đào tạo

Có đáp án

SP NHÀ XUẤT BẢN ĐẠI HỌC SƯ PHẠM

NGÔ VĂN MINH
Trung tâm Nghiên cứu và Biên soạn sách Anh Ngữ
VFIRSTBOOK

BÀI TẬP
CHUYÊN ĐỀ NGỮ PH

TIẾNG ANH 11

Biên soạn theo chương trình
của Bộ Giáo dục và Đào tạo

Có đáp án

SP NHÀ XUẤT BẢN ĐẠI HỌC SƯ PHẠM

NGÔ VĂN MINH
Trung tâm Nghiên cứu và Biên soạn sách Anh Ngữ
VFIRSTBOOK

BÀI TẬP
CHUYÊN ĐỀ NGỮ PHÁP

TIẾNG ANH 10

Biên soạn theo chương trình
của Bộ Giáo dục và Đào tạo

Có đáp án

SP NHÀ XUẤT BẢN ĐẠI HỌC SƯ PHẠM

TỔNG PHÁT HÀNH - TRUNG TÂM VĂN HOÁ TRÀNG AN
ĐC: 54/171 Nguyễn An Ninh - Hoàng Mai - Hà Nội
Tel: 04 3664 7143 - 3662 1060
Fax: 04 6284 1316
Mobile: 0912 344 084
Email: vanhoatrangan54@yahoo.com

8900100256
Giá: 34.000 đ